

# **DESCRIPTIVE NOMINAL MODIFIERS IN SETSWANA**

**BY**

**KGOMOTSO MOTHOKHUMO AMBITIOUS  
THELEDI**



Dissertation presented for the Degree of Doctor of  
Literature at the University of Stellenbosch.

Promoter:                      Prof M.W. Visser

**DECEMBER 2002**

## **DECLARATION**

I, the undersigned, hereby declare that the work contained in this dissertation is my own original work and that I have not previously in its entirety or in part submitted it at any university for a degree.

Signature

Date

## ABSTRACT

The study focused on three descriptive nominal modifiers which specify the attributes of nouns, i.e. the morphological adjective, the relative clause and the descriptive possessive.

The morphological adjective appears in an adjectival phrase, which has to consist of a determiner and an adjective. The adjective must have agreement with the head noun in an NP. The adjective root may appear with nominal suffixes such as -ana and -gadi, it can be reduplicated, it may be transposed to other categories and it may even be compounded. The AP may also occur in predicative position as well as in comparative clauses.

The relative clause may have the same semantic properties as the adjective. The relative clause in Setswana consists of a determiner in the position of the complementizer followed by an IP. Such an IP may have a copulative or non-copulative verb. Attention in this study has focused on the nominal relative, which appears as a complement of a copulative verb. These nominal relative stems have been divided into two sections, i.e. a section in which the nominal relative stems may not appear in a descriptive possessive construction and a second section where these stems may also appear as a complement of the possessive [a]. The semantic features of these nominal relative stems have been isolated and it is clear that they show a wide variety of semantic features. This type of relative clause represents the most prolific category, which specifies the attributes of nouns.

The third category, which displays the semantic feature of an attribute of a noun, is the descriptive possessive construction. The syntactic and semantic structure of this type of phrase has been investigated. A wide variety of complements of the possessive [a] have been isolated in Setswana and some semantic features have received specific attention, i.e. group nouns and partitives.

## OPSOMMING

Die studie fokus op drie deskriptiewe nominale bepalers wat die attribute van naamwoorde spesifiseer nl. die morfologiese adjektief, die relatief en die deskriptiewe possessief.

Die morfologiese adjektief kom voor in 'n adjektieffrase wat bestaan uit 'n bepaler en 'n adjektief. Die adjektief moet klasooreenstemming hê met die kernnaamwoord in 'n naamwoordfrase. Die adjektiefstam kan voorkom met nominale suffikse soos **ana** en **gadi**, dit kan geredupliseer word, oorgeplaas word na ander kategorieë en selfs samestellings vorm. Die adjektieffrase kan ook voorkom in 'n predikatiewe posisie sowel as in vergelykings.

Die relatief kan dieselfde semantiese eienskappe hê as die adjektief. Die relatief in Setswana bestaan uit 'n bepaler in die posisie van die komplementeerder gevolg deur 'n infleksiefrase. So 'n infleksiefrase kan 'n kopulatiewe of nie-kopulatiewe werkwoord bevat. Die aandag in hierdie studie het gekonsentreer op die nominale relatief wat voorkom as 'n komplement van 'n kopulatiewe werkwoord. Hierdie nominale relatiewe stamme is verdeel in twee afdelings nl. 'n afdeling waarin die nominale relatiewe stamme nie kan voorkom in 'n deskriptiewe possessiewe konstruksie en 'n tweede afdeling waar hierdie stamme ook kan voorkom as 'n komplement van die possessiewe [a]. Die semantiese kenmerke van hierdie nominale relatiewe stamme is geïsoleer en dit is duidelik dat hulle 'n wye verskeidenheid van semantiese kenmerke het. Hierdie tipe relatief verteenwoordig 'n baie wye keuse t.o.v. die attribute van naamwoorde.

Die derde kategorie wat die semantiese kenmerk van 'n attribuut van 'n naamwoord vertoon, is die deskriptiewe possessiewe konstruksie. Die sintaktiese en semantiese struktuur van hierdie tipe frase is nagegaan. 'n Groot verskeidenheid komplemente van die possessiewe [a] is geïsoleer in Setswana en sommige semantiese kenmerke het spesifieke aandag gekry nl. groepnaamwoorde en partitiiewe.

## **DEDICATION**

This study is dedicated with great gratitude to my children: Tshiamo Theophilus Otsile Theledi and Takatso Seifo Rachel Theledi, whom I live for and those who have held the net for me.

## **ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FOR NRF**

**The financial assistance of the National Research Foundation (NRF) towards this research is hereby acknowledged. Opinions expressed and conclusions arrived at, are those of the author and are not necessarily to be attributed to the National Research Foundation.**

## **ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS**

I would like to give particular thanks to my creator, the Almighty God, for giving me the strength and courage to accomplish this academic task.

I would also like to pass my thanks to everyone who, through advice, power and moral support made a contribution to this task:

Prof. J.A. du Plessis and Prof. M.W. Visser, of the Department of African Languages, University of Stellenbosch for the love, commitment, assistance and encouragement during the course of this study. For them I would like to say: “Tswarang fela jalo dikakapa”.

My children Tshiamo and Takatso for their understanding when I had to leave them for some time.

To my mother, Hilda Molohe, my father Buti Molohe, my sister Salamina and her children and those whose names do not appear here, I also express my sincere gratitude for their encouragement and moral support.

# CONTENTS

	<b>Page</b>
Declaration .....	i
Abstract .....	ii
Summary .....	iii
Dedication .....	iv
NRF Acknowledgement .....	v
Acknowledgements.....	vi
 <b>Chapter 1: Introduction</b>	
1.1 Aim of the study .....	1
1.2 Method and organisation .....	4
1.3 The adjectival category .....	5
1.3.1 Bhat .....	5
1.3.2 Backhouse .....	9
1.3.3 Miller .....	12
1.3.4 Pustejovsky .....	17
1.3.5 Quirk .....	19
1.4 The semantics of the adjective .....	23
1.4.1 Dixon .....	23
1.4.2 Bierwisch .....	27
1.4.3 Siegel .....	29
1.4.4 Grivon .....	34
1.4.5 Klein .....	38
1.4.6 Gross .....	41
1.5 Antonymy .....	44
1.5.1 Charles and Miller .....	44
1.5.2 Justeson and Katz .....	46
1.5.3 Murphy and Andrew .....	48
1.5.4 Fellbaum .....	49



**Chapter 2: The morphological adjective**

2.1	Aim .....	53
2.2	The syntactic structure of the AP .....	53
2.2.1	X-bar theory .....	53
2.2.2	The structure of the AP .....	54
2.2.3	The structure of the NP with an AP .....	56
2.2.4	The determiner phrase with an AP and a demonstrative .....	56
2.2.5	The determiner in the AP .....	57
2.2.6	The complements of the adjective .....	58
2.2.7	The adjective .....	59
2.3	The morphology of the determiner .....	59
2.4	The morphology of the adjective .....	61
2.4.1	Morphological categories .....	61
2.4.2	The morphological structure of the adjective .....	62
2.4.3	The noun class prefix .....	63
2.4.4	The noun class prefix of class 9 .....	64
2.4.5	The noun class prefix of class 8 and 10 .....	66
2.4.6	The locative noun classes and the infinitive .....	69
2.4.7	The noun class prefix of class 1 and 3 .....	71
2.4.8	The adjectival stems with its suffixes .....	72
2.4.9	The stems -ngwe and -fe .....	75
2.4.10	Reduplication .....	77
2.5	Semantics of the adjective .....	78
2.5.1	Semantic classification of the adjectival root .....	78
2.5.2	Selection restrictions .....	80
2.5.3	Individual-level and stage-level .....	90
2.5.4	Antonyms .....	91
2.6	Transposition .....	92
2.7	Compound adjectives .....	94
2.8	Syntactic distribution of AP .....	95
2.9	Conclusion .....	99

**Chapter 3: The relative clause**

3.1	Aim .....	101
-----	-----------	-----

3.2	The structure of the relative clause .....	101
3.3	The non-copulative verb in the relative clause .....	103
3.4	The copulative verb in the relative clause .....	108
3.5	The nominal-relative stem .....	116
	A. The nominal-relative stem does not appear with a possessive [A] .....	118
	B. The nominal-relative stem may also appear with a possessive [A] .....	154
3.6	Semantic features of nominal relative stems and complements of a descriptive possessive [A] .....	222

#### **Chapter 4: Descriptive possessives**

4.1	Aim .....	288
4.2	The structure of the possessive .....	288
4.3	The semantics of the descriptive possessive .....	289
	4.3.1 The descriptive possessive .....	290
	4.3.2 Group nouns .....	303
	4.3.3 Partitives .....	313
4.4	Conclusions .....	325

#### **Chapter 5: Conclusions** .....

326

#### **Bibliography** .....

347

# CHAPTER 1

## INTRODUCTION

### 1.1 AIM OF THE STUDY

There are various problems related to the concept of descriptive nominal modifiers (descriptives or adjectives) in the African languages such as Setswana. It is traditionally accepted in the linguistic literature that the African languages do contain the category adjective, which is identified in most of the studies on Setswana and related African languages. This adjectival category has been recognised in traditional, pre-theoretical studies on morphological grounds as well as on the other major feature of this category, namely that it always constitutes a closed class of adjective stems (see Doke et al 1957, Cole 1955, Louwrens 1994). African languages like Setswana are characterised by modifier-head agreement morphology, exemplifying person, number and noun class gender features. Thus, in Setswana the adjective stem has to appear with the noun class prefix of the noun it modifies, as illustrated in the following example:

**[lo-bota [lô [lo-leele]]**

(a long wall)

Furthermore, there are approximately 20 adjectival stems in Setswana, which represent a closed class. A general property of adjectives in languages of the world (in contrast to the African languages) is that they constitute an open class, and not a closed class as is the case in Setswana (see Bhat 1994, Bolinger 1967, Ferris 1993, and Kamp 1975). Together with nouns and verbs, adjectives form a major class of lexical items in the languages of the world, and they are not generally viewed as closed classes.

The first major research question to be addressed in the study will be concerned with the morphosyntactic characteristics of the category adjective in Setswana. It is generally accepted in the linguistic literature that adjectives as a morphosyntactic category are quite different from nouns and verbs, although the exact nature of this distinction is not always clear. Furthermore, adjectives are considered to form part of a bigger class of nominal modifiers which include i.a. possessives and various quantifiers. Most adjectives do have

a descriptive function, but certain criteria will be developed in the study for the African languages, and for Setswana, in particular, to posit a proper characterisation for this category. The only aspect as regards adjectives that researchers agree on cross-linguistically, relates to the function of an adjective as modifying a noun.

In the preliminary investigation conducted for the study, the following categories in Setswana have been identified as possibly having the function of an adjective. These categories all have a modifying as well as a descriptive function when they appear with nouns:

1. **Adjectives**

(See the example above)

2. **Descriptive possessives**

Noun phrases may appear as a complement of a possessive morpheme [a], where this [a] has no possessive meaning. These constructions appear in all African languages, where they have a descriptive and modifying function, as illustrated in the following example:

**[ditena [tsa [samente]]**

(cement bricks)

**[pitsa [ya [metsi]]**

(a pot of water)

3. **Nouns**

Nouns in Setswana, as in the African languages more generally, frequently appear with inherent semantic features of adjectives. Such nouns have an adjectival function in all the African languages. Consider the following examples:

a. **sefofu** (blind person)

b. **setlaela** (foolish person)

4. **Relative clauses**

Various relative clauses in Setswana have an adjectival descriptive function, as demonstrated in the following examples:

4.1 Relative clauses with non-copulative state verbs:

**[dikgomo [tse [di-nonneng]]**

(fat cattle)

4.2 Relative clauses with copulative verbs:

4.2.1 With nominal-relative complements:

**[dijo [tse [di monate]]**

(nice food)

4.2.2 With an NP as complement:

**[monna [yo [e-leng legatlapa]]**

(The man who is a coward)

4.2.3 With a PP as complement:

**[banna [ba [ba-nang [le maatla]]**

(men who are strong)

The first research question addressed in the study will thus focus on the above categories in Setswana, with the aim to establish criteria by which they can be distinguished, as they all have a modifying and descriptive function. The central issue in this investigation will be concerned with the morphosyntactic and semantic status of the category, traditionally identified as adjective in Setswana, as it is clear from the above examples that the category adjective may have a wider scope in the African languages. For this purpose the literature on categories in generative grammar will be examined with a view to finding principled criteria (see sources cited in Bibliography).

The second major research question explored in the study will be concerned with a possible semantic classification of those nominal modifiers illustrated above which have a descriptive function. No such classification has been made for any African language. This question essentially centres around the following issue:

What concepts can be expressed in a language adjectivally? It is possible to assume a field-descriptive perspective on the taxonomic classification of adjectives. In this regard Dixon (1991) identifies the following concepts in positioning classes of adjectives: dimension, physical property, colour, human propensity, age, value, speed, difficulty, similarity, qualification. Such adjectival classes can be very useful for descriptive purposes but they reveal very little about the functional or relational properties of the predicate. It seems as if a semantic classification is needed, based on the relational and logical behaviour of the predicates rather than on their folk-epistemology.

The theory of lexical semantics will be employed to develop a principled classification of these concepts for Setswana. Central to this classification, is the problem of the interpretation, and implications of concepts such as the following:

- (i) In their very nature adjectives are generally taken to denote states. Thus the distinction is generally between two types of states i.e. individual-level and stage-level states.
- (ii) The distinction as regards types of states related to the older distinction applied to adjectives, i.e. that of accidental vs. necessary qualities.
- (iii) Another basic semantic relation among descriptives is antonymy. Antonymous adjectives express opposing values of an attribute. The importance of antonymy became obvious from results obtained with word association tests: when the probe is a familiar adjective, the response commonly given is its antonym (see Charles 1989, Fellbaum 1995, Justeson 1991, Murphy and Andrew 1993).

Various other issues as regards the adjective as descriptive modifier in Setswana will be investigated in the study, including the different senses of polysemous adjectives which occur with specific nouns to give rise to selectional preferences, and the gradation in which concepts such as temperature can be graded from hot, warm, cool to cold.

## **1.2 METHOD AND ORGANISATION**

A range of theoretical concepts of current lexical semantic theory will be employed to formulate diagnostics for the identification and classification of word-level items, as well as

phrases and clauses as adjectival categories. An extensive data corpus will be collected and then analysed within the framework of principles and concepts of lexical semantics in order to present arguments for a new classification of the category adjective in Setswana. The research method will entail an in-depth investigation of the morphosyntactic structure of the word-level, phrasal and clausal nominal modifiers considered for classifying as adjectives in order to make explicit the full range of morphosyntactic properties that adjectives in Setswana may exhibit. In the data collection and analysis deductive and inductive methods will be utilised in a cyclical way in positing a classification of adjectives for Setswana. The dissertation will be organised in the following way:

**Chapter 1** presents the aims of the study, and reviews previous research on the adjective.

**Chapter 2** examines the morphological adjective.

**Chapter 3** examines the relative clause.

**Chapter 4** investigates the descriptive possessive.

**Chapter 5** presents the conclusions of the study.

## 1.3 THE ADJECTIVAL CATEGORY

### 1.3.1 Bhat (1994)

Adjectives in languages like English are different from nouns and verbs. Adjectives are defined as words that denote properties or qualities. Adjectives are differentiated from nouns and verbs because nouns denote person, places and things whereas verbs denote events or actions.

Bhat (1994, 13) points out that Rosch associates the notion of categories at the basic level e.g. **chair, car or dog** can be regarded as basics i.e. rocking chair or sports car. Bhat (1994, 14) points out that Lakoff's distinction in the "level" of lexical items depends upon the way people interact with objects like the way they perceive them, image them, organise information about them. This shows that categorisation does not merely depend on the needs, experiences and motivation of human beings who establish the categories.

Lexical categories can all be grouped into a single category but this is opposed by Bhat (1994, 247), that is, an attempt to force a characteristic that exists only in some language families. Categories do have distinct functions of their own.

Bhat (1994, 251) indicates a set of differentiation criteria that can be used to establish adjective as a category such as evaluation of mixed category claim. In this table adjectives are considered to share characteristics with both nouns as well as verbs:

Category	Feature complex
Noun	+ N - V
Verb	- N + V
Adjective	+ N + V
Preposition	- N - V

The criteria are interconnected and functionally motivated. There is a need to differentiate between basic and extended uses of lexical items. Adjectives need to be regarded as a mixed category.

Bhat (1994, 246) points out that languages form gradations concerning each of the categorical distinctions like noun-adjective, verb adjective.

In other languages such as Greek and Sanskrit it is difficult to differentiate between nouns and adjectives because the languages belonged to one extreme end of noun-adjective gradation.

There are other language families such as Salish or Munda where the lexical categories like nouns, verbs and adjectives can all be grouped together into a single category of contentives or predicators.

Other linguists argued that adjectives constitute a mixed category. Bhat (1994, 247) indicates that the notion of modification which constitutes the primary function of adjectives, is dependent upon that of reference but a sense of the notion of reference can also be regarded as being dependent upon that of predication. It is only the speaker's



desire to state an event or describe an action which makes it necessary for him to specify certain individuals or objects. Categories do have distinct functions of their own and have distinct characteristics which result from those functional distinctions. He went on to distinguish the following three issues:

a) **Notion of natural classes**

The syntactic feature analysis predicts that adjectives and verbs form a natural class because they share the feature [+V] and adjectives and preposition form unnatural class because they do not share any features among themselves. According to Bhat (1994, 250) it is hard to see how [N,V] is less of a natural class than [A,V] if we look at the facts in a variety of languages. [N,A,P] can be natural class for having a QP-type specific system but this cannot be expressed in this feature system. Bhat (1994, 250) mentioned that Muysken and Van Riemsdijk point out that ergative languages appear to have verbs that are not case assigners and German has adjectives that are case assigners.

Adjectives are considered to be incapable of taking either a subject or an object e.g. \*John's fearful and \*Afraid Bill. Sentences like John is afraid involve the occurrence of an auxiliary (is) taking a subject and not the occurrence of an adjective (afraid) taking a subject.

Bhat (1994, 250) mentions that Muysken and Van Riemsdijk (1985, 4) consider this feature analysis of Jackendoff to be untenable on the basis of the fact that subject and object are grammatical notions and are defined in terms of categories and structural notions like domains, they cannot be used as basic notions in the definition of categories.

(b) **Categorial and extended uses.**

Bhat (1994, 248) points out the three important theoretical implications such as that the adjectives constitute a mixed category and they are not as basic as the others, and the lexical categories can be regarded as having the same basic structure and can be formulated in terms of the X-bar theory. Bhat (1994, 251) indicates that when lexical items are used in functions which are not their own, they tend to lose some of their own characteristics and manifest characteristics of categories to which

the functions actually belong e.g. Adjectives used in the function of verbs retain some of their own adjectival characteristics like allowing degree modification and functioning as the bases of comparison and exclamation. Characteristics which adjectives are said to share with nouns and verbs are the ones which they show when used in the functions of reference and predication. Adjectives are considered to be [+N] categories in view of the fact that they can receive case.

(c) **Neutralisations of distinctions**

Adjectives are indistinguishable from nouns or verbs in all their usages. Bhat (1994, 253) points out that attempts have been made by some scholars to modify this syntactic feature system, especially from the point of view of the type of feature - complexes that are to be assigned to different categories in order to satisfy the demands of languages that are markedly different from English.

Bhat (1994, 258) points out that there is also the problem of accounting for the fact that languages like English lexicalise property concept words into a distinct word class. It appears that a language failed to establish a distinct category only when the relevant functional distinction is being regarded by it as not important.

(d) **Verby and nouny adjectives.**

Languages can be split into two distinct types of adjectives i.e. nouny-adjectives and verby-adjectives. We have mixed category which express adjectival meanings. According to Bhat (1994, 258), Westzer (1992, 239) gives some different version of this mixed category but he does not consider that a language has a distinct class of adjectives, a subclass of adjectival verbs or adjectival nouns. Bhat (1994, 258) indicates that languages in which adjectives carry out a distinct function of their own can be regarded as having a distinct adjectival category. Adjectives can be established as a distinct category on the basis of their distinctiveness in the function of nominal modification.

Bhat (1994, 248) points out the three important theoretical implications that can be formulated in terms of the X-bar theory. The X-bar theory can be used to show the distinction of the characteristics of these lexical categories. According to Bhat

(1994, 268) some languages failed to show category distinctions of the types that are recognised by X-bar theory so the X-bar theory is irrelevant.

Adjectives are different from both these types of expressions because they do not show either of these two types of properties when used in their own primary function of modifying a noun or verb. The X-bar theory can be maintained in the case of the extended uses both of nouns as well as adjectives. In the case of adjectives structural similarity with verbs occur only when the lexical items concerned are used in the predicative position and not in the attributive position. So some of the characteristics are retained by verbs in their extended use.

### 1.3.2 Backhouse (1983)

The Japanese adjectives constitute a large, open word class. Adjectives in Japanese are viewed as a word class or a part of speech i.e. a word class that is established on the basis of grammatical criteria labelled with semantic considerations.

According to Backhouse (1983, 170) in the establishment of the grammatical criteria for word classes syntactic criteria are primary and morphological criteria are in general assigned a secondary role. Backhouse (1983, 170) points out that the descriptions of modern Japanese recognise the presence in the language of two groups of adjective-like words but they show a considerable disagreement in their choice of both criteria and labels.

There are two groups of the adjectives of which one is inflected and the other one is uninflected and attaches forms of the copula. In Japanese the *-i*-adjectives are inflected whereas the *na*-adjectives are uninflected and attach forms of copula. According to Backhouse (1983, 170) the *-i*-adjective have been treated as a sub-class of verbs. Here are the grammatical similarities between the *-i*-adjectives and verbs: Morphologically, both types of words are inflected. Backhouse (1983, 170) maintains that the *-i*-adjectives **NAGAI** 'long' has associated forms as **nagai**; **nagakatla**, **nagaku** and the verb **TABERU** 'eat' has forms such as **taberu**, **tabeta**; **tabeyoo**. Morphologically, they share a fair degree of overlap of inflectional categories e.g. **nagai** vs. **nagakatla** with the category of tense i.e. present vs. past. Syntactically, both occur directly with the functions of

predication and adnominal modification. Backhouse (1983, 170) indicates that both are modified in adverbial patterns e.g.

**[Kono rombun-wa nagai].**

(This article is long)

**[Nagai rombun]**

(a long article).

At the same time they exhibit clear differences on the form of inflectional endings and in their numbers e.g. Morphosyntactically, the inflectional categories of imperative and hortative are absent in the *-i*-adjectives and verbs yield regular morphological passive, causative and potential counterparts. Syntactically, there is no combination of the *-i*-adjectives with the auxiliary verbs.

Backhouse (1983, 171) maintains that adjectives do not govern a direct object but *-i*-adjectives occur directly with adverbial function. There are intransitive stative verbs which are closer to *-i*-adjectives than to more typical verbs.

Backhouse (1983, 171) indicates that if *-i*-adjectives are to be subsumed under verbs, it is considered in terms of the following aspects:

### **Na-adjectives and cross-classification**

In this regard Backhouse (1983, 173) identifies the study of cross-classification between *na*-adjectives and (abstract) nouns as follows:

	<b>Noun</b>	<b>Na adjective</b>
<b>GENKI</b>	'vigour'	'vigorous, healthy'
<b>SHIAWASE</b>	'happiness'	'happy'
<b>JYUU</b>	'freedom'	'free'
<b>ANZEN</b>	'safety'	'safe'
<b>SHIZEN</b>	'nature'	'natural'
<b>SON</b>	'loss'	'unprofitable, damaging'

There is a confusion of word classification here. Backhouse (1983, 174) maintains that the first point is to emphasise that it is a restricted, sporadic phenomenon and large numbers of central **na**-adjectives possess no noun counterparts of this type. Many nouns of this type are highly restricted in distribution.

Cross-classification of **na**-adjectives occur with adverbs and not with nouns. According to Backhouse (1983, 175) such words are to be classified separately as adverbs because they occur unmarked as modifiers of verbs and adjectives.

### **The grammatical characteristics of -i-adjectives and na-adjectives.**

The **-i**-adjectives are inflected morphologically whereas **na**-adjectives are uninflected and occur everywhere as a morphologically distinct sub-type of an intransitive set of peripheral sub-classes. Backhouse (1983, 171) takes these distinctions as a classic borderline area because words according to him like **TABERU** and words like **NAGAI** will be assigned to different word classes.

### **Na-adjectives and nouns.**

**Na**-adjectives are labelled as a sub-class of nouns. According to Backhouse (1983, 172) the case for treating **na**-adjectives as nouns is more readily disposed of than the case for treating **-i**-adjectives as verbs. **Na**-adjectives and nouns are both uninflected and occur attached to the copula. There are grammatical similarities and differences between **na**-adjectives and nouns e.g. Morphologically, they are both uninflected. Syntactically, they occur with the function of predication with the copula attached. They both occur with the function of adnominal modification. Their differences are: Though they both function as adnominal modifiers, they carry different markings. There are words which function as subjects and objects. Backhouse (1983, 172) indicates that **Kirei** is followed by **na**, **HON** is followed by **no**. It means words like **HON** are modified in adnominal patterns and words like **KIREI** are modified in adverbial pattern. These show the establishment of word classes with forms of the copula attached. Morphosyntactically, the adnominal and predicative functions are formally distinguished in **na**-adjectives but not in **-i**-adjectives. Backhouse (1983, 175) maintains that in Japanese **da** is unique amongst the inflected forms and is restricted to predicative position.

Syntactically, both groups occur with the characteristic functions i.e. predication, adnominal modification and adverbial modification. One can realise that the *-i*-adjectives and *na*-adjectives are not to be distinguished as syntactic sub-classes because there are no properties in which they might be distinguished at a more delicate syntactic level.

The *-i*-adjectives and *na*-adjectives have been characterised with semantic distinctions. Backhouse (1983, 178) borrows Dixon's seven semantic types such as dimension, physical property, colour, human propensity, age, value and speed. According to Backhouse (1983, 179) the *-i*-adjectives are present in all categories whereas the *na*-adjectives are totally absent, only in the smaller categories of colour, age and speed. The *-i*-adjectives may be characterised as the basic native type and *na*-adjectives as an uninflected group of loanwords of both Sino-Japanese and Western pedigree.

The problem of the description of the Japanese adjective is caused by a gross reliance on morphology and a corresponding disregard for basic syntactic functions. Backhouse (1983, 185) indicates that adjectives are to be sought out at the level of syntax rather than morphology. Classes, once established, need to be labelled but there is a lack of uniformity. The problem is the term 'adjective' vis-à-vis 'noun' and 'verb'. These should be treated as incompatible. Backhouse (1983, 185) indicates that adjective is sometimes used as a hyponym of 'verb' or 'noun' that is why *-i*-adjectives are characterised as a sub-class of verbs and *na*-adjectives as a sub-class of nouns.

Backhouse (1983, 186) suggests that where there is a lack of independent word class 'adjective' and words denoting qualities, a form of syntactic sub-class of verbs or nouns should be labelled as 'qualitative verb' or 'qualitative noun'.

### **1.3.3 Miller (1989)**

Adjectives are classified as words whose sole function is to modify nouns e.g. large and comfortable in a large chair; a comfortable chair; big house, a comfortable house.

Nouns can be used as adjectives e.g. Kitchen knife and bread knife. According to Miller (1989, 47) Wordnet contains 16,428 adjective synsets including many nouns, participles and prepositional phrases that function frequently as modifiers e.g. home as in home cooking or home office.

Here adjectives are divided into two categories i.e. descriptive adjectives and relational adjectives.

#### a) **Descriptive adjectives**

The descriptive adjectives constitute the larger category. These adjectives display typical semantic and syntactic properties. Miller (1989, 47) indicates that the distinctions are not always clear-cut and in the Wordnet they tend to overlap.

A descriptive adjective ascribes to a noun a value of an attribute. Miller (1989, 48) points out that if X is adj. It presupposes that there is an attribute A such that  $A(X) = \text{Adj}$ . e.g. The package is heavy presupposes that there is an attribute Weight such that  $\text{Weight}(\text{package}) = \text{heavy}$ .

The descriptive adjectives are classified as antonymy, gradation; markedness, polysemy, selectional preferences, color, quantifiers and participial adjectives. There is no hyponymic relation that generates nominal hierarchies for adjectives i.e. it is not clear that one adjective is a kind of some other adjective. Like for instance the basic semantic relation among descriptive adjectives is antonymy.

#### 1. **Antonymy**

The antonymous adjectives express opposing values of an attribute e.g. the antonym of heavy is light. There is a relation between word forms that implies that a word form with two different meaning is two different word forms. According to Miller (1989, 49) in Wordnet that difference is represented by digits e.g. if **hard** means '**unyielding**' then is **hard 1** and when **hard** means '**difficult**' is **hard 2**, then the antonym of **hard 1** is **soft** and of **hard 2** is **easy**.

The problem is that the antonymy relation between word forms is not the same as the conceptual opposition between word meanings. Most antonyms are formed by a morphological rule that changes the polarity of the meaning by adding a negative prefix e.g. un- or -in. Morphological rules apply to word forms not to word meanings. Miller (1989,49) indicates that they generally have a semantic reflex.

Miller (1989, 50) indicates that all descriptive adjectives have antonyms, those lacking direct antonyms have indirect antonyms. According to Miller (1989, 50) in Wordnet direct antonyms are represented by the antonymy pointer and indirect antonyms are inherited through similarity which is indicated by the similarity pointer and meaning '**is similar to**'.

The antonymy is a semantic relation between words rather than between concepts e.g. association data and the occurrence data indicate that **big** and **little** are considered a pair and **large** and **small** are considered a pair. Miller (1989, 48) indicates that the importance of antonymy is obtained with word association test and antonymy in the organisation of descriptive adjectives is recognised when the function of adjective expresses value of attributes and that attributes tend to be bipolar.

## 2. Gradation

Gradation is a semantic relation organising lexical memory for adjectives. Miller (1989, 53) suggests that gradation can be expressed by ordered strings of adjectives e.g. **size, lightness, Quality, body weight and temperature**. Miller (1989, 53) provides the examples of graded adjectives as follows:

<b>Size</b>	<b>Lightness</b>	<b>Quality</b>	<b>Body Weight</b>	<b>Temperature</b>
Astronomical	Snowy	Superb	Obese	Torrid
Huge	White	Great	Fat	Hot
Large	Ash-grey	Good	Plump	Warm
-	Grey	Mediocre	-	Tepid
Small	Charcoal	Bad	Slim	Cool
Tiny	Black	Awful	Thin	Cold
Infinitesimal	Pitch-black	Atrocious	Gaunt	Frigid

The most difficult grade to find terms for is the neutral middle of each attribute i.e. it is simply not lexicalised, whereas extremes are extensively lexicalised. According to Miller (1989, 53) most grading is done by morphological rules for the comparative and



superlative degrees. According to Miller (1989, 53) the relation of gradation does not play a central role in the organisation of adjectives.

### 3. Markedness

Most attributes have an orientation. Miller (1989, 53) indicates that it is natural to think of them as dimensions in a hyperspace, where one end of each dimension is anchored at the point of origin of the space. The point of origin is the expected or default value; deviation from it merits comment and is called the marked value of the attribute. Miller (1989, 53) points out that in an important paper on German adjectives Bierwisch (1967) noted that only unmarked Spatial adjectives can take measure phrases e.g. the **pool is five feet deep** is acceptable, the measure phrase; **five feet** describes the **DEPTH** of the pool, but it is not acceptable when using the antonym i.e. **the pool is five feet shallow**. Here **deep** is the unmarked term and **shallow** is marked but does not take measure phrases.

Miller (1989, 54) indicates that measure phrases are not appropriate with many attributes, yet markedness is a general phenomenon that characterises nearly all direct antonyms. The unmarked term is the default value of the attribute.

### 4. Polysemy and Selectional Preferences

The different senses of polysemous adjectives such as **old**, **right**, **short** occur with specific nouns e.g. the sense of 'old' meaning '**not young**' frequently modifies hyponyms of person like **man** and 'old' meaning '**not new**' frequently modifies hyponyms of artifact. Miller (1989, 55) points out that adjectives are selective about the nouns they modify i.e. the general rule is that if the referent denoted by a noun does not have the attribute whose value is expressed by the adjective, then that adjective-noun combination requires a figurative or idiomatic interpretation e.g. **tall** can be used for a building or a person because building and a person have **height** as an attribute but **streets** and **stories** do not have height so they do not admit literal readings.

Miller (1989, 55) indicates that the semantic contribution of adjectives is secondary to the nouns they modify and they depend on the nouns they modify. Miller (1989, 55) points out that Edward Sapir (1944) seems to have been the first linguist to point out explicitly that many adjectives take on different meanings when they modify different nouns e.g. **tall**

denotes one range of heights for a **building** or a **tree** and still for a **person**. It appears that part of the meaning of each of the nouns **building**, **tree** and **person** is a range of expected values for the attribute **height**. **Tall** is interpreted relative to the expected height of objects of the kind denoted by the head noun i.e. a tall person is someone who is tall for a person.

## 5. Color Adjectives

According to Miller (1989, 56) the elaborate color terminology is a consequence of technological progress and not a natural linguistic development because in other languages it begins with a single, conventional attribute, **Lightness**. Some languages have only two color terms to express values of that attribute. Miller (1989, 57) indicates that they are always added along lines determined by innate mechanisms of color perception rather than by established patterns of linguistic modification.

## 6. Quantifiers

Quantifier specifies the quantity of a term e.g. all, some, many, few, less or both. Miller (1989, 57) indicates that some linguists include quantifiers in the class of determiners i.e. the, this, their, whose function is to determine the reference of a noun phrase.

Quantifiers share other characteristics with determiners. Syntactically, they appear in two positions i.e. they appear in prenominal position e.g. **some books** and **the books** and they appear in preadjectival position e.g. **some large books**; **the large books**. A quantifier tells us how many entities or how much substance is being referred to. According to Miller (1989, 57) quantifiers resemble descriptive adjectives. They have antonyms such as **much / little** and **many / few**. They can modify the two major classes of nouns i.e. **count nouns** such as **apple** or **book** and **mass** or **noncount nouns** such as sugar or furniture.

According to Miller (1989, 58) quantifiers are classified as a subclass of adjectives and includes them in the descriptive adjective file.

## 7. Participial adjectives

A subclass of descriptive adjectives ending in **-ing** and **-ed** are the participle forms of verbs e.g. **obliging waiter** and his **accustomed thoroughness**.

Miller (1989, 58) indicates that many participial adjectives do not fit comfortably into the cluster structure of descriptive adjectives because they lack antonyms, either direct or indirect. Then Wordnet maintain a separate file e.g. each adjective is entered individually rather than as part of a cluster. According to Miller (1989, 58) participial adjectives do have direct or indirect antonyms e.g. indirect antonym - **laughing children** - > **unhappy**; direct antonym - **married couples** > **unmarried**. These adjectives are included in the category in Wordnet rather than being cross-referenced to verbs.

### (b) Relational adjectives

Relational adjective is the second large and open adjective class. This class consists of adjectives that are related semantically and morphologically to nouns, though the morphological relation is not always direct. They play an important part similar to that of a modifying noun and function as a classifier, e.g. musical in musical instrument is related to music. They differ from descriptive adjectives in a number of ways e.g. they do not refer to a property of the nouns they modify and so do not relate to an attribute. They are not gradable e.g. the extremely atomic bomb is not acceptable. They occur only in attributive position as modifying nouns do. They lack direct antonyms. Miller (1989, 60) indicates that most of them do not fit comfortably into the cluster arrangement of descriptive adjectives. Those that do not fit in the cluster are placed in a separate file. If the relational adjective does have a direct antonym, then the pair can serve as a bipolar focus for related senses e.g. physical / mental and they can be arranged or placed in the descriptive file.

#### 1.3.4 Pustejovsky (1996)

Adjectives denote states. Adjectives are classified by virtue of syntactically distinct behaviours, including the basic distinction between predicative and attributive position. Pustejovsky (1996, 20) illustrates this distinction as follows:

1. (a) the alleged criminal  
(b) \*This criminal is alleged.
  
2. (a) the frightened boy.  
(b) The boy is frightened.

There are similarities between adjectives and verbs e.g. adjectives can be seen as intransitive and transitive forms for example:

- (a) Shophia is old
- (b) John is envious of Mary's position.

The "old" in (a) takes no complement but adjectives such as envious and jealous are relational. Pustejovsky (1996, 21) mentioned that they can be analyzed as transitive.

Adjectives allow movement-like behaviour e.g.

- (a) Mary is certain to be the next President.
- (b) It is certain that Mary will be the next President.

Adjectives are subject-control predicates and have no alternating construction, while tough-movement adjective such as easy, tough and difficult can alternate. Pustejovsky (1996, 22) mentioned that Dixon distinguishes adjectives according to the general semantic field associated with the term. Adjectives are semantical classified as follows:

- (a) Dimension e.g. big; short
- (b) Physical property e.g. hard; soft
- (c) Color e.g. red; green
- (d) Human Propensity e.g. jealous; happy
- (e) Age e.g. old; young.
- (f) Value e.g. good; bad.
- (g) Speed e.g. fast; slow.
- (h) Difficulty e.g. difficult; easy.
- (i) Similarity e.g. alike; similar.
- (j) Qualification e.g. possible; likely.

According to Pustejovsky (1996, 23) these classes can be useful for descriptive purpose but reveal little about the functional or relational properties of the predicate.

### 1.3.5 Quirk (1979)

There are four features which are considered to be characteristic of adjectives. (See below.)

The adjective as a part of speech can be characterised by these features. In English adjective and adverb have been considered as parts of speech and referred to as word-classes. According to Quirk (et al, 1979, 231) no one can tell whether a word is an adjective by looking at it in isolation because the forms of a word does not necessarily indicate its syntactic function e.g. a word belong to more than one class, for example the word 'good' can be:

She is good (verb)

A good person (adjective)

She appeared good to win the competition (adverb)

There are many common adjectives that have no identifying shape e.g. hot; little; young; fat. Quirk (et al, 1979, 231) indicates that it is true that many adjectives inflect for the comparative and superlative e.g.

Great, greater, greatest

Old, older, oldest.

Bright, brighter, brightest.

But many do not allow inflected forms such as disastrous; \*disastrouser; \*disastrousest.

Many adjectives in English provide the base from which adverbs are derived by means of an **-ly** suffix, e.g.

Adjective - beautiful

Adverb - beautifully.

Some do not allow this derivational process e.g. there is no adverb like **oldly** derived from an adjective **old** or **littlely** from **little**.

Four features are as follows:

1. They can freely occur in attributive position i.e. they can premodify a noun e.g.

The beautiful dress.

The offended man.

2. They can freely occur in predicative position, i.e. they can function as subject or complement e.g.

The child is beautiful.

I consider the man old.

3. They can be premodified by the intensifier **very** e.g.

The man is very old.

The colour is very bright.

4. They can take comparative and superlative forms whether inflectionally or by the addition of the premodifiers **more** and **most** e.g.

The boy is taller than him.

He is the youngest child.

He is more flexible than others.

They are the most important people in this country.

When using adjectives in sentences one realizes that not all words possess all of these features but some of the features apply to words that are generally considered to belong to other classes. Let us test these adjectives by applying five criteria in a table below which was used by Quirk (et al, 1979). The first four of the

criteria are an explanation of the four features that are considered characteristic of adjectives while the fifth criterion introduces a feature that is characteristic of nouns. Since words can belong to more than one class, we place them in the context of a sentence, so that it should be clear which use of the words is being tested, e.g.

- (a) Beautiful > The child is beautiful.
- (b) Old > The man seemed old.
- (c) Bright > The man is very bright.
- (d) Tough > The man is tough.
- (e) Abroad > Peter is abroad.
- (f) Soon > The competition is soon.
- (g) Utter > The man is an utter fool.
- (h) Apple > His favourite fruit is apple.

There are words such as 'utter' that could not be placed predicatively but most of the words here can be placed predicatively.

#### **The five criteria are as follows:**

- (i) The item can function in attributive position e.g. The beautiful child.
- (ii) The item can function in predicative position following the intensive verb seem e.g. The man seemed old.
- (iii) The item can be premodified by the intensifier very e.g. The man is very cruel.
- (iv) The item can accept comparison i.e. the comparative and superlative forms, whether inflected or periphrastic e.g. (a) The man is brighter than all.  
(b) John is the toughest boy.
- (v) The item can function as direct object e.g. I like meat. For this criterion to apply, either the indefinite article or the zero article must be available.

Quirk (et al, 1979, 231) presents the table of five criteria for establishing adjective classes as follows:

	Attributive	Predicative with seem	Very	Comparison	Direct object
a) Beautiful	+	+	+	+	-
b) Old	+	+	+	+	-
c) Bright	+	+	+	+	-
d) Tough	+	+	+	+	-
e) Abroad	-	-	-	-	-
f) Soon	-	-	+	+	-
g) Utter	+	-	-	-	-
h) Apple	+	-	-	-	+

The first four words are adjectives i.e. beautiful, old, bright, tough while abroad and soon would be assigned to the adverb class and apple to the noun class.

In this table one can distinguish the first four adjectives in relation to the five criteria from the words that are assigned to other classes, i.e.

- (i) The adjectives can function attributively and predicatively after soon.
- (ii) The adjectives cannot function as direct object if they are required to take the indefinite article or the zero article.

In this table the acceptance of premodification by very and the ability to take comparison have no diagnostic value for the present purpose. These two features generally coincide for a particular word and are determined by a semantic feature i.e. the gradability of item e.g. adjectives can be modified by adverbs because these two classes use the same features to realize the gradability of an item. Gradability includes comparison such as **tall - taller - tallest** and other forms of intensification such as:

very young  
so plain.

Adjectives are distinguished positively by their ability to function attributively and predicatively after intensive verbs including **seem** e.g. **The man seemed asleep**, but we cannot say: **\*The man seemed abroad**.



Quirk (et al, 1979, 234) indicates that those words that function both attributively and predicatively are central to the class of adjectives, while those that are limited to one or other function are peripheral adjectives. The word '**abroad**' can be classified as a peripheral adjective and some like **beautiful** and **bright** can be classified as central adjectives.

## 1.4 THE SEMANTICS OF THE ADJECTIVE

### 1.4.1 Dixon (1977, 1991)

There are major parts of speech i.e. large, open-ended classes such as noun; verb and adjective. The recognition of word classes or parts of speech within a language depends on morphological and syntactic criteria. Similarities can be recognised between word classes in different languages even if they have different morphological and syntactic properties but the recognition involves semantic and universal syntactic criteria.

Dixon (1977,19) indicates that the linguists have paid no attention to the formulation of criteria of this kind.

The lexical items of a language fall into a number of semantic types. Each semantic type has certain norm syntactic and morphological properties i.e. each member of a type shows the norm properties. Dixon (1977, 31) indicates that adjectives can be classified into seven types on semantic, syntactic and morphological criteria. Dixon (1997, 31) presents the following examples as follow:

1. Dimension e.g. big, large, little, small, long, narrow.
2. Physical property e.g. hard, soft, heavy, light, rough, hot.
3. Colour e.g. black, white, red, green.
4. Human properties e.g. jealous, happy, kind, clever.
5. Age e.g. new, young, old.
6. Value e.g. good, bad.
7. Speed e.g. fast, quick, slow.

Dixon (1991, 78) extended the association of the semantic types with the grammatical class adjective in English as follows:

1. Dimension e.g. big, great, short, thin.
2. Physical property e.g. hard, strong, clean.
3. Speed e.g. quick, fast, rapid.
4. Age e.g. new, old, young.
5. Colour e.g. white, black, red, crimson.
6. Value e.g. (a) good, bad, lovely  
(b) odd, strange, necessary.
7. Difficulty e.g. easy, difficult, tough.
8. Qualification, with a number of subtypes:
  - (a) Definite e.g. definite, probable, true.
  - (b) Possible e.g. possible, impossible.
  - (c) Usual e.g. usual, normal, common.
  - (d) Likely e.g. likely, certain.
  - (e) Sure e.g. sure.
  - (f) Correct e.g. right, wrong, sensible.
9. Human propensity, with a number of subtypes:
  - (a) Fond e.g. fond.
  - (b) Angry e.g. jealous, angry, mad.
  - (c) Happy e.g. anxious, keen, happy, thankful.
  - (d) Unsure e.g. certain, sure, unsure.
  - (e) Eager e.g. ready, prepared, willing.
  - (f) Clever e.g. clever, stupid, lucky, kind.
10. Similarity; comparing two things, states or events e.g. like, unlike, similar, different.

According to Dixon (1991, 79) these ten Adjective types, have different grammatical properties. For example the prefix **un-** occurs with a fair number of Qualification and Human Propensity adjectives, some of value and few from physical property, but with none from dimension, speed, age, colour or difficulty. The suffix **-en** is used with many adjectives except from 6 – 8. Dixon (1991, 79) points out that derived adverbs may be formed from all adjectives in Speed, Value, Qualification, Human Propensity and similarity, but adverbs based on adjectives in Dimension and Colour tend to be restricted to a metaphorical meaning. Many adjectives from the Dimension, Physical property, speed,

age and colour types form derived verbs by the addition of **-en**; e.g. **they widened the road.**

Dixon (1991, 85) points out that many languages do not have words for qualification as members of the adjective class, they may be adverbs or grammatical particles.

Dixon (1977:32) summarises the semantic, syntactic and morphological properties of the semantic types as follows:

Stellenbosch University <http://scholar.sun.ac.za>

Semantic type	Kinds of semantic opposition	Derivation with -un	Occurrence with -ish	Inchoatives causative allowing phon. restriction	Place in order	Item qualified	Same meaning of adj.	Metaphorical meaning	Sentence
Dimension	All antonym pairs strong marking	-	Yes	Most	2	Noun	-	Some varied possibilities	-
Physical property	Antonym prs weak marking some complements set	A few	Yes	Yes	3	Noun	Few	Most	-
Colour	Complement set and hyponyms	-	Yes but not hyponyms	Only black, white, red & yellow	7	Noun	-	Some	-
Age	Antonym prs	-	Yes	One	6	Noun	-	-	-
Value	Antonym prs and hyponyms	Some	Yes good, bad only	Only bad and good	1	Non value adj.	Yes	-	-
Speed	Antonym pr	-	Yes	Yes	4	Noun	Yes	-	?
Human propensity	Single terms with some characteristics of antonym	Many	Rare	Very rare	5	Noun	Yes	-	Yes

Semantic type	Verb	Adjective	Topic manner	Comparison of adverb
Dimension	Yes	-	-	More + adverb
Physical property	Yes	Yes	-	More + adverb
Colour	Yes	-	-	More + adverb
Age	-	-	-	-
Value	Yes	Yes	Yes	Comparative adj.
Speed	Yes	-	Yes	More + adv or comparative adj.
Human propensity	Yes	Yes	-	More + adverb

This summary indicates how the seven semantic types make up the word class adjective. Dimension and physical properties have similar possibilities. Physical properties and colour share some similar properties. Speed has some remarkable similarities with value. All value items belong to value type. Through this association one can realise that adjectives do not require tense, aspect or mood. Adjective specifies number or person and depends on noun. Dixon (1977, 63) indicates that adjective describes some important, but non-critical property of an object. Adjective distinguishes between two members of the same species that are referred to by a single common noun.

#### **1.4.2 Bierwisch (1962)**

Adjective in German is a constituent containing an adjective possibly modified by certain types of degree and modifying in turn either the subject of a copula type sentence or main verb. Items are arranged in pairs and can be extended by using 'derived adjectives' and receive their counterparts by the prefix un-. Some adjectives have more counterparts, corresponding to different meanings.

At the meaning of a word the semantic properties are stated in terms of classes of objects or conditions of the surrounding universe. According to Bierwisch (1967, 2) each semantic marker should be connected with certain classes of objects, types of relations or properties of the universe which the speakers of that language inhabit. . To learn a new language forces one to learn not only new lexical items, new syntactic and phonological rules, but also to learn new semantic markers.

Bierwisch (1967, 3) indicates that the semantic markers in an adequate description of a natural language do not represent properties of the surrounding world in the broadest sense. There must be the relation between the semantic primitives and their combinations which are part of the combinatorial structure of language.

The features analysed to a group of German adjectives.

#### **1. Polarity of German adjectives.**

In German the sentence types show the copula sentences with Adjectival as predicate and intransitive sentences with an Adv (erbial) manifested by an Adjective. The constituent

Deg (ree) may contain several structures. This shows that an Adj. In German is a construent containing an adjective possibly modified by certain types of Degrees i.e. the subject of copula or main verb. According to Bierwisch (1967, 6) polarity plays an important role in the structure of Adjective. When restructuring the adjective, the set of pairs can easily be extended by using the derived adjectives such as the prefix **un -**.

The adjectives are syncategorematic in their meaning. Bierwisch (1967, 10) points out that adjectives express themselves when the norm has been implied. When using Polarity one can determine the measurable adjectives (+ Pol) as the increasing number of units. Bierwisch (1967, 12) indicates two classes of adjectives i.e. one for which the normalization point around which the scale is arranged lies within the scale and one for which it is one of its ends. These classes are not coextensive with that established by the possibility of absolute measurement e.g. **hell** in German cannot take an MP but it belongs to the lang / kurz-class.

## 2. **Spatial structures of German Adjectives.**

There is a relation in German adjectives. The adjectives are related to the dimensions of space as long as the modified nouns are physical objects. Bierwisch (1967, 13) points out that all physical objects have three dimensions orthogonal to each other i.e. the result of the human perceptual apparatus, not a property of the universe. Different combinations and further qualifications would be needed for the other spatial adjectives in German.

A marker can be used to differentiate the vertical dimension and horizontal dimension. Bierwisch (1967, 14) indicates that the verb '**stellen**' and '**legen**' are both meaning '**to put**' but they have different dimensions e.g. '**stellen**' indicates a placement with respect to the (+ Vert)-axis of an object and '**legen**' with respect to a (- Vert) –axis, marked in the object. A book can be placed both according to its (- Vert) and (+ Vert)-axis and they are equally normal.

There are words in German in which the two adjectives refer to different dimensions and others have the same dimension of the object marked as (+ Pol). There is a restriction in the combination of adjectives which are connected with sound or global objects. Bierwisch (1967, 16) indicates that the dimensions, together with all their qualifications are part of the spatial structure of the nouns and they specified the features of Physical object.

According to Bierwisch (1967, 17) only (- Inherent)-adjectives may be combined with a prepositional phrase to form an Adverbial. Other adjectives do not enter an Adverbial but are reduced predicates of the subject of the sentence. An object may have a maximal axis. These can be described by a marker. The markers ( $\pm$  Max) then represent an aspect of the expected proportions of an object. It is not easy to decide whether the basic features govern the interaction of expected proportions with the surrounding world or not. Bierwisch (1967, 20) illustrates the structure of certain diagnostic nouns by using numbers. Numbers can be used as an illustration in order to show how the dimensions are distributed on the different markers under (n Space).

Bierwisch (1967, 21) used marker trees instead of the marker strings. The marker trees are not formally used to represent the constituent structure trees but rather to dependency trees, i.e. two markers (M) and (N), branching from a Marker (P) are not dominated by (P) but they are dependent on (P) in a sense similar to that formalized in the theory of dependency grammars. According to Bierwisch (1967, 23) the lexical entries may be based on the formal principles of dependency systems.

The Semantic structure of a lexical entry can be given as a string of markers. The lexical entries must be given item by item, according to the general principles of the semantic structure. When looking at the meaning of adjectives Bierwisch (1967, 27) indicates that the (Pol) marker constitutes the modification of the adjectives under consideration and the remainder (R) constitutes their domain.

Bierwisch (1967, 34) indicates that the primitive semantic elements are not isolated features that must be learned item by item in the process of language acquisition and interpreted in the linguistic theory strictly separated from each other. They are the features of the whole structures such as normativity, spatiality and verticality. Their relations are represented in the semantic markers. All these markers must be thought as part of the innate capacity for language learning. The meanings are governed by general principles of combination.

### 1.4.3 Siegel (1979)

Measure adjectives constitute a class of the simple predicative adjectives that are usually called absolute adjective and not related directly to other relative adjectives.

Adjectives have been distinguished into two frameworks i.e. the two-faced adjectives and the categorial component.

### (i) The two-faced Adjectives

In this framework the adjective is a word that modifies a noun and appears either in the predicate or next to the noun as part of the noun phrase e.g.

- (a) The car is white
- (b) The white car

Here, adjective as a word can occupy two quite different syntactic positions, but not every adjective can appear in both positions.

### (ii) The Categorial component

In this framework the adjective is assigned into two different syntactic categories. Siegel (1979, 224) indicates that predicate adjectives will belong to a one-place predicate category to be called *t//e* in order to distinguish it syntactically from intransitive verb phrases and common noun phrases (*t/e*). The predicate adjectives will combine with a semantically empty **be** by syntactic rule to form a phrase and a sentence.

Adjectives in an attributive position will belong to the category *t//e / t/e*, i.e. common noun phrases to make more complex common nouns in syntactic rule and the corresponding translation rule. Siegel (1979, 226) points out that there is a clear semantic duality among adjectives i.e. the property that an adjective represents may be bound to the meaning of a common noun it modifies,

e.g. 1. **Mary is a beautiful dancer.**

Here the meaning of beautiful is bound to that of dancer meaning Mary is beautiful as a dancer. She dances beautifully, although she may not be beautiful to look at.



Siegel (1979, 226) indicates that the readings of adjectives that are bound to the meanings of their common noun are to be called relative and those that are not bound are to be called absolute.

The present analysis constitute a pair of homonyms that are absolute and relative.

Siegel (1979, 227) establishes the examples of adjectives that are absolute and that are relative and a pair of homonyms as follows:

<b>Absolute</b>	<b>Relative</b>	<b>Both</b>
speckled	rightful	beautiful, clever
nearby	actual	navigable representative

In the translation rule and the use of definitions, conventions and meaning postulates, the translation of a sentence with a predicate adjective is as follows:

- (a) beautiful: (meaning)  
Mary is beautiful. (absolute)

This shows that the semantic type corresponding to the common noun category for adjectives is appropriate to the relative meaning of adjectives:

- (b) beautiful.  
Mary is a beautiful dancer. (relative).

Siegel (1979, 228) indicates that the adjective does not modify an individual but applies to the intension of the common noun i.e. the meaning of the adjective is relative to the meaning of the common noun that it applies to.

## **Transformations**

How do the adjectives look like or how do they appear? The predicate adjectives have the absolute reading and the pronominal adjectives have the relative reading. I have indicated

that adjectives that can appear only in predicate position have only the absolute reading. Some adjectives can occur only predicatively such as

- The baby is asleep.
- the asleep baby.
- The boat is afloat.
- the afloat boat.

The adjectives which originate in predicate position are all and only ones that have the absolute reading, while adjectives that originate in pronominal position are all and only that exhibit the relative. According to Siegel (1979, 229) the word 'beautiful' would be translated into two constants of the intentional logic i.e. one a member of the predicate category and the other the common noun category. Siegel (1979, 230) indicates the two syntactic rules i.e. the old transformational rule and the one that accounts for the presence of some relative readings in predicate position.

### **Measure adjectives as members of category t/e.**

Adjectives have been measured as members of category of common nouns. The measure adjectives have traditionally been called relative. Siegel (1979, 231) argues that measure adjectives are not relative but are members of the absolute category e.g. A veteran manager is not veteran and a manager but Veteran as a manager. Here the expressions with CN/CN adjectives and expressions with measure adjectives cannot be translated conjunctively for different reason

### **Extensionality of measure Adjectives**

Relative adjectives apply to intensions of common nouns. Siegel (1979, 232) points out that it can be seen informally that measure adjectives are not interpreted relative to the intension of a common noun in the same way that CN/CN's are e.g. two expressions have been used i.e.

1. a good car. (good as a car) CN/CN
2. a fast car. (fast for a car) measure adjective.

In (1) the reading of good is an intentional, CN/CN reading; but to understand the meaning of 'good', one must know the meaning of a car i.e. one must know the word that he/she is using or talking about. The reading of 'fast' is measure adjective. We have another indication of the relativity of measure adjective i.e.

3. old rope
4. long rope.

In (3) the expression is that the 'rope' is old. It can never be used again but the interpretation of 'long' has nothing to do with the meaning of rope. Its interpretation depends upon the selection of comparison class.

Siegel (1979, 233) indicates that the direct evidence of the extensionality of measure adjectives is difficult to find because of the indeterminacy of measure adjective.

### **Membership in category t//e.**

According to Siegel (1979, 237) it is not good to classify measure adjectives as CN/CN's because they are not like other CN/CN's semantically since they are extensional. Measure adjectives are not like CN/CN's syntactically. They are just like t//e's. Measure readings emerge only in the environments where they are permissible.

1. We all know naughty Nancy.

Here the adjective do not seem to be combined with CN. The adjective combines with a term phrase.

Siegel (1979, 239) points out that the measure readings are from a special interpretation of t//e adjectives. Only adjectives that have absolute readings ever have measure readings. Adjectives that are relative in the intentional do not develop the measure kind of relativity.

2. Jack is a blithering fool, but he's not a blithering idiot.  
(\*blithering for a fool but not blithering for an idiot.)
3. This is the actual design that was used, but it's not the actual building.

(\*actual for a design, but not actual for a building.)

A 'for' measure paraphrase changes the interpretation of the adjective from the relative interpretation to the absolute interpretation. This shows that all adjectives are associated with a measure interpretation. The ones that do not, are adjectives that cannot be taken as picking out any kind of a measurement scale.

#### 1.4.4 Givon (1970)

According to Givon (1970, 816) adjectives are not semantic primitives but rather are semantically based upon or derived from nouns or verbs.

The adjectives are paired in quality and measure as follows:

#### **The nature of the pairing relation of adjectives.**

The relationship between marked and unmarked adjectives. In marked adjectives one member of the pair seems to always function as the unmarked or generic cover-term for the common quality involved in both members e.g. the question might be **How big is it?** then the answer is **It is very big** or **it is very small**, but the question of **How small it is?** May only be answered by **It is very small** not by **\*It is very big**. These are some examples as follows:

1. How long is it?  
Very long.  
Very short.
  
2. How short is it?  
Very short.  
but not \*very long.

There are quality nouns that cover the entire measurement range such as length; breadth; width; thickness, while the corresponding shortness, narrowness, thinness apply only to one extreme. There are two members of an adjective pair that share a basic quality e.g.

**I am familiar with length of ...** this implies any length on the scale.

**I am familiar with the shortness of ...** pertains only to something short, never long.

Though they are differently oriented, they did show some relation in a basic quality.

### **1.1 The negative pairing test.**

Givon (1970, 818) indicates that the two members of adjective pairs are negatively related.

The relative order is irrelevant for the test, as is the presence of an overt - rather than inherent negative marker e.g.

He is small and she is not small either.

He is stupid and she is not wise either.

He is unwise and she is not wise either.

Here, the paired adjectives are negatively related. This test is incapable of resolving an interesting question i.e. Which member of the negatively related pair is the one incorporating the negative marker.

### **1.2 The negative member test.**

Givon (1970, 819) points out that applying the test to paired adjectives is not always easy, since most of them may not predicate sentences in which they themselves serve as predicates e.g.

It is true that it is true = it is true.

It is good to be good, so be good.

The inherently negative verb or adjective becomes the positive member of the pair when an overt negative marker is added to it e.g.

It is doubtful that it is doubtful = it is doubtful.

It is deniable that it is deniable = it is deniable.

## 2. Paraphrases of paired adjective senses.

Paraphrases involve the use of certain negatively paired adjectives within the definitional frames themselves, where their functions seems to be primarily that of marking the positive vs. the negative members. Positive members are characterized by use of the adjectives such as large, big, high, great and negative counterparts are small, low, little e.g. having great size = having small size.

## 3. The quantifier slot and the semantics of measure phrases.

According to Givon (1970, 822) the precise quantification and measure phrases may be an extension of some sub-component long before they are present in the semantic structure of quality adjectives. The paraphrases of measure queries, unquantified answers and quantified answers all suggest the relation between the adjectival measure phrase and quantification of the quality noun, e.g. query:

- (a) How long is the table?
- (b) Unquantified answer:  
The table is (very) long.
- (c) Quantified answer:  
The table is [five feet] long.

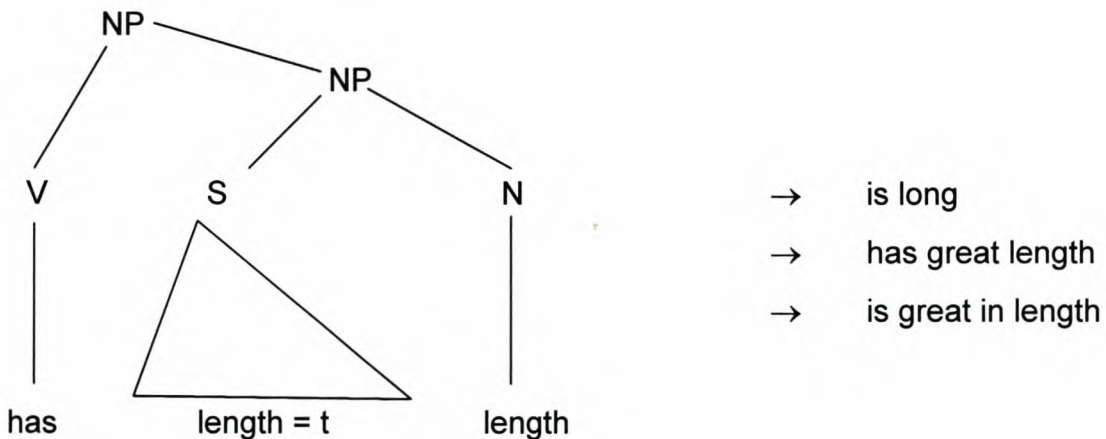
In quantified answer the adjective (long) is used in its generic or unmarked capacity.

Givon (1970, 823) indicates the structures of underlying and surface as follows:

Underlying structure

Surface structure

Unmeasured:



Paraphrases can also be used in comparing measures,

e.g. Table A is longer than Table B

The length of table A exceeds that of table B.

Givon (1970, 835) claims that the definition of an adjectival sense cannot be likewise headed by an adjective that may underscore the claim that at the core of the semantic structure of adjectives lie nouns or verbs i.e. adjectives are not semantic primitives while nouns and verbs are.

Adjectives derived from verbs with suffixes **-ive**, **-ing**; **-able**:

e.g. He is being very negative = He is denying

He is very reasonable = He is acting in a reasonable manner.

Many **-able** derived adjectives seem to be of a different nature. Their semantic derivation apparently involves an underlying **can** or **be able to**, which are by themselves stative e.g.

He is unbeatable

\*He is being unbeatable

It is questionable.

\*It is being questionable.

Adjectives may be derived from nominalizations i.e. verbs and noun; with the suffix **-ful** or its negative counterpart **-less**. The derived adjective seems to be stative, e.g.

Stative: I am hopeful that ... I hope that ...

\*I am being hopeful that ... \*I am hoping that ...

Active: He is helpful to them. He helps them.

He is being helpful to them. He is helping them.

Givon (1970, 835) indicates that the study of material of this kind is forever complicated by the fact that sense extension from more stative adjectival senses (be ADJ) to more active senses (act in an ADJ-ly manner) is a much used lexical transformation in English. It is better to deal with senses of lexical items rather than with the ill-defined lexical item as a whole.

#### 1.4.5 Klein (1980)

The semantics should be close to the surface syntax of the construction and should not be dependent on postulating degrees or extents as primitive entities. Klein (1980, 113) indicates that the semantic interpretation of comparative constructions have consisted of translating the target sentences into expressions of a logical calculus, i.e. the part of mathematics that deals with changing quantities.

- 1) Peter is taller than Jane
- 2) Peter is taller than Jane and Jane is taller than Chris.

It is difficult to justify the two distinct variables in these sentences. These sentences are primitives in the semantic theory. The degrees are basic objects unless we restrict to adjectives like 'tall', for measuring height and to identify the 'extent to which Peter is tall' with some point on the appropriate scale. The only thing that one can determine the truth is by using the height of the two individuals i.e. one will realize that it is true or false.



3) Steve is more reasonable than Teresa.

Steve may be more amenable and co-operative than Teresa while Teresa has a great ability to form sensible and well-founded judgements. Klein (1980, 115) points out that it would be difficult to assign a definite truth value to this sentence until the relevant criteria for applying the word reasonable have been clarified. The interpretation of this sentence will be heavily context – dependent.

### 1. A formal treatment of vagueness

The interpretation of adjectives can be determined by using the two features i.e. vagueness and context-dependence. The constructed language may contain expressions which are vague. The context-dependence could be built into the system. Phrase structure rules are responsible for placing adjectives in both pronominal and predicate position i.e. adjectives in predicate position should indeed be interpreted as predicates not as displaced noun modifiers. There are degree modifiers such as adjectives which co-occur with modifiers e.g. so, too, that, as, more /-er and very, fairly, quite.

The only predicate expressions are one-place predicate constants. These will correspond to degree adjectives i.e. **Mary is tall.**

This sentence will be translated as **tall (Mary)**. It is sometimes claimed that a degree predicate **tall** means **taller** than X where X is some norm – say the average person. Klein (1980, 119) indicates that there seems to be no obstacle to identifying the extension gap with the norm for **tall** or identifying the positive extension of **tall** with those individuals who are **taller** than norm. All this information is given to us by the meaning of the positive adjective, treated as a vague predicate.

According to Klein (1980, 119) there is no absolute norm for applying a degree adjective. The norm will vary from context to context. It will depend on the comparison class which is associated with the adjective on a particular occasion of use, for example:

**Nat is large.**

One cannot determine its truth until we have answered the question i.e. large for a what? The context determines a comparison class which is simply a subset of the universe.

**2. Degree Modifiers**

A degree modifier combines with an adjective to form an adjective phrase e.g. Gill is five foot six. Klein (1980, 120) indicates that semantically the degree modifier will map adjective meanings into adjective meanings i.e. the  $L_1$  will include the formation rule as such:

- 1) If X is a predicate constant and Y is a predicate modifier, then Y (X) is a predicate.

Other modifiers such as very and quite can be used here to show the relative to the vague model.

- 1) Chris is very tall.
- 2) Chris is quite tall.

$L_1$  contains a set of predicate modifiers and any member of this set denotes a function from predicate meaning to predicate meanings. Klein (1980, 120) points out the following examples as such:

Very (tall)

+					
Chris	Steve	Jude	Gill	Alex	

Quite tall

+					
Chris	Steve	Jude	Gill	Alex	

## 1. Antonymous Predicate Adjectives

Antonymy is not easily defined. The problem of defining antonymy can be simplified by limiting the domain of discourse to adjectives, since that limitation eliminates relative and complementary terms which are antonymous nouns. Gross (1989, 93) points out that adjectives can be used as predicates in sentences of the form NP e.g. **rich** is a predicate adjective in **the man is rich**. All adjectives can be used attributively – **the rich man** but some adjectives cannot be used predicatively e.g. **The former champion** cannot be **\*the champion is former**.

This distinction between predicative and nonpredicative adjectives is complicated. Gross (1989, 93) indicates that the distinction can be ambiguous for instance in '**dramatic criticism**' it is not clear whether 'dramatic criticism' refers to criticism of a drama or criticism that is dramatic.

Several criteria can be used to distinguish predicative from nonpredicative adjectives. Gross (1989, 93) points out that the two cannot be used conjunctively e.g. a rude and civil engineer is acceptable only as Zeugma. Nonpredicative adjectives partition their head nominal into subclasses i.e. corporate lawyers vs. non-corporate lawyers. This is not gradable; but a quite corporate lawyer is acceptable only as humour. Gross (1989, 93) indicates that nonpredicative adjectives cannot be nominalized the way predicate adjectives can.

## 2. The Semantics of Predicative Adjectives

There are relevant categories of antonyms that can be accounted for the semantic role that predicative adjectives play:

- 1) Predicative adjectives express value attributes.
- 2) Attributes are bipolar.
- 3) Attributes can be gradable.

Attribute is used to refer to a construct that might equally well be called a property, quality, feature or dimension. Gross (1989, 94) mentions that if X is adjective where Adj. Is a

These modifiers always close the extension gaps associated with their arguments, then this means that predicate modifier will denote a function which takes a partial function in the set  $\{0,1\}^4$  and turns it into a total function in  $\{0,1\}^4$ .

There is no clear demarcation between things that are true of and things they are false of. In the semantics proposed by Klein (1980, 119) this vagueness is represented formally by letting such adjectives denote partial functions i.e. functions which are undefined for some arguments, e.g. if Jude is on the borderline between being tall and short in a given context, then the sentence Jude is tall will lack a truth value in the context. The treatment of vagueness can be presented as a positive extension, a negative extension and an extension gap.

An important characteristic of degree adjectives is that they co-occur with measure phrases, intensifying adverbs and various complex modifier phrases.

Klein (1980, 134) suggests that the semantic role of such degree modifiers is to eliminate the extension gap associated with the head adjective and to systematically shift the boundary between the positive and negative extension.

#### **1.4.6 Gross (1989)**

Gross (1989, 92) proposes that meaning of predicative adjectives in English are organized in semantic memory by relations of antonymy and synonymy. The basic semantic structure is given by antonymous pairs, with synonymous adjectives clustering around the two antonyms.

Adjectives seem to be organized differently from nouns. Gross (1989, 92) points out that it is not clear what it would mean to say that one adjective is a hyponym of another or that Adjective.  $A_1$  is 'a kind of' adjective  $A_2$ . According to Gross (1989, 92) the basic organizational relation between adjectives have been assumed to be antonymy. Gross points out that Deese (1964, 1965) concluded that 'a very considerable portion of the associative meaning of common English Adjectives can be directly described by the contrast or polar – opposite scheme and that not every adjective is a member of such contrasting pair but speculated that 'other, less common adjectives would then have their intraverbal meaning described by a combination of meaning of the fundamental contrasts.

predicative adjective is assumed to mean that there is an attribute and this shows that Adjective is the value of the function  $A(X)$ .

Synonyms are gradable adjectives i.e. the sense or senses that two words share may be more salient for some pairs than for others. There is a difference between contrasted and loosely contrasted terms i.e. loose contrast might occur when two synonymy relations are involved e.g. the indirect antonyms such as *abstruse/superficial* can be derived from the direct antonyms e.g. *deep/shallow* by virtue of the similarity of *abstruse* to *deep* and of *superficial* to *shallow*.

Gross (1989, 95) points out that the rule is the direct antonym of an adjective  $A_1$  that is similar to adjective  $A_2$  which is indirect antonym of adjective  $A_2$ . Predicative adjectives without direct antonyms are synonyms of adjectives that have direct antonyms. This indicates that both synonymy and antonymy are required in order to characterize the semantic structure of the domain of predicative adjectives.

### 3. The Organization of semantic memory

Memory appears in clusters of synonymous terms and pairs are held together conceptually by bipolar attributes whose opposite ends are labelled by direct antonyms that provide focus for the clusters e.g. **wet** and **dry** are direct antonyms. Clustered with wet are damp, moist, soggy, waterlogged and clustered with **dry** are baked, arid, parched, dehydrated, thirsty.

Gross (1989, 96) points out that Deese (1965, 134) indicates that many of the adjectives that do not appear among the contrast pairs themselves owe their intraverbal meaning to combinations of underlying pairs. Adjectival senses depend heavily on the noun phrases in which they occur.

### 4. The Morphology of predicative Adjectives

Direct antonymy is a relation between pairs of words e.g. **happy/sad** are directly antonymous oppositions which are derived by rules of word formation i.e. happy/unhappy. The fact that direct antonymy is a relation between pairs of words, not pairs of concepts

would not require any special explanation if all of the examples were derived rather than opaque antonyms.

A word formation is a rule for deriving one word from another e.g. by adding an affix and changing the meaning. Antonymous adjectives are derived from adjectives by word formation rules adding a variety of prefixes such as un-; in-; non-; de-; dis-; a-.

The attributes underlying antonymous pairs have an orientation e.g. when an antonymous pair is formed by a rule of word formation the affix indicates the marked member e.g. **legal/illegal** the unmarked member is legal since the prefix **il-** serves as an explicit marker. There are antonymous pairs which do not carry affixes that serve as marker e.g. good/bad but Gross (1989, 98) indicates that good is the unmarked norm and bad is the marked departure from the norm.

Gross (1989, 98) points out that as long as the focus is on derived antonyms, antonym is obviously a morphological relation between pairs of concepts. Antonym is a word not a concept that stands in opposition to another word.

## 1.5 ANTONYMY

### 1.5.1 Charles and Miller (1989)

Two adjectives are antonyms when the two words become associated by virtue of sharing context e.g. **wet** and **dry**. The fact that people can recognize that **wet** and **dry** are both adjectives must mean that they have learned that these words are interchangeable in particular grammatical slots.

The antonymous associative bond is learned from the contexts that these words share in ordinary text and discourse. Charles and Miller (1989, 359) point out the two different hypotheses as follows: Co-occurrence: Two adjectives are learned as direct antonyms because they occur together in the same sentences more frequently than chance would allow and Substitutability: Two adjectives are learned as direct antonyms because they are interchangeable in most contexts, i.e. because any noun phrase that can be modified by one member of the pair can also be modified by the other.

The co-occurrence hypothesis are assumed to be primary factors. The substitutability hypothesis requires mediation i.e. the association between an adjective and its direct antonym is assumed to be mediated by the context into which both can be substituted.

These hypotheses are tested into three experimental results. Charles and Miller (1989, 361) indicate in their experiment results that the actual sentences used in everyday discourse do not provide context that can elicit either word.

In the experiment 1 the contexts of direct antonyms were extended to include comparisons of the contexts of indirect antonyms. The method was used to study the direct antonyms such as strong/weak. The choice was constrained by several considerations i.e. both should be predicative adjectives, they should be common enough that no subjects in the experiment could fail to know them; they should satisfy Deese's (1964) criterion that each would be the most frequent associate of the other and they should occur frequently enough in the Brown Corpus (Francis & Kučera, 1982).

Tables were used to summarize the results for sorting contexts for the direct antonyms i.e. strong/weak. The results were that for sorting contexts of indirect antonyms are less discriminable than those of direct antonyms. In the substitutability hypothesis – the adjectives involved in a relation of direct antonymy are set apart from other adjectives that have similar meanings.

Charles and Miller (1989, 364) indicate that the opposite is the case in representative usage i.e. sentential contexts in which either direct antonym is equally appropriate are relatively rare. It is difficult to interpret these correspondences of adjective like strong > weak > powerful > faint because different word counts disagree with one another. Charles and Miller (1989, 364) point out that it is difficult to interpret the correspondence because the corresponding frequencies in the Lorge magazine count (Thorndike and Lorge, 1944) are 770, 276, 186 and 308 and in the Dahl count of spoken words (Dahl, 1979) are 198, 74, 32 and 3. According to Charles and Miller (1989, 366) this method of analysis confirms the conclusion that contexts of direct antonyms are easier to discriminate than are other sets of adjectival contexts.

Charles and Miller (1989, 367) point out that Charles (1988a) was right when he found that nouns with similar meanings tend to occur in similar contexts e.g. **strong/powerful** and

**weak/faint** – occur in contexts that are harder to discriminate than are the contexts of adjectives with contrasting meanings.

Experiment 2 was used to test the results of the contexts of **public** adjectives. The result was that the contexts of public adjectives are more recognizable than that of strong adjectives. The contexts of similar adjectives i.e. public/open; private/secret was unexpectedly distinguished but it does not change the evidence that contextual substitutability does not explain how pairs of antonymous adjectives come to be so strongly associated.

Charles and Miller (1989, 373) indicate that the substitutability hypothesis may be required for an associative account learning syntactic categories but it is simply not available as an explanation for learning pairs of antonymous adjectives. There is no prove that antonymous pairing is learned as a consequence of co-occurrence. No sentences were found in which the indirect antonyms **strong and faint; powerful and weak** co-occurred. There are adjectives such as big; little; large and small that give a more reliable estimate of their relative frequencies of co-occurrence. They show the specificity of antonymous pairing. According to Charles and Miller (1989, 374) the co-occurrence hypothesis applies only to learning antonymous association.

## 1.5.2 Justeson and Katz (1991)

### 1. Antonymic Association

According to Justeson and Katz (1991, 1) antonym is a special lexical association between word pairs. The lexical and not simply semantic follows from the fact that different words for the same concept can have different antonyms e.g. big – little, large – small are good antonyms pairs but large – little is not.

**Word association** : Justeson and Katz (1991, 2) indicate that Deese's data are consistent with this and suggest further that at least the most frequent antonymous adjectives are associated more directly with each other than with other adjectives. The formation of associations among events is found to depend upon temporally close occurrence of the associated events. Justeson and Katz (1991, 2) point out that the antonymous adjectives do co-occur within the same sentence much more often than is expected by chance.



When antonyms do co-occur they usually substitute for one another in clausal or phrasal context. Justeson and Katz (1991, 3) propose that antonym association takes place via co-occurrence and it is their substitution in repeated contexts that makes this training particularly effective.

## **2. Co-occurrences among Antonyms**

Justeson and Katz (1991, 3) point out adjectives do occur in the same sentence as their antonyms far more frequently than expected by chance. This was tested by using 1,000,000 word Brown Corpus. Charles and Miller (1989) also tested this by using four pairs of antonyms such as big – little, large – small, strong – weak and public – private. According to Justeson and Katz (1991, 3) to test the hypotheses concerning sentential co-occurrence of words, the corpus must be divided into sentences.

## **3. Morphological Antonyms**

Adjectives derived from the other by an affix of negation such as a-; ab-; il-, un- and non-. Morphological antonyms require separate treatment because their lexical antonymy is recoverable morphologically. Justeson and Katz (1991, 7) show that morphological antonyms show the same tendency for greater than chance numbers of co-occurrence that characterizes non-morphological antonyms.

## **4. Syntactic contexts of co-occurrences**

Sentences and noun phrases have been used to show the differences of sentential and noun phrase contexts of an adjective from those of its antonym in sentences that are not readily substitutable for one another. Justeson and Katz (1991, 10) indicate that Charles and Miller did not address sentences in which antonyms do co-occur. The antonymic adjectives are usually syntactically paired and are commonly found in conjoined phrases that are identical or nearly identical e.g. There was good fortune and there was bad.

## **5. Co-occurrence theory of Antonym Association**

Justeson and Katz (1991, 13) point out that the lexical antonyms co-occur sententially far more than would be expected by chance. Sentences with antonym co-occurrences do

seem to be crucial ones for understanding the formation of antonymic association. The association is based on terms of regular syntactic patterns that they exhibit. Justeson and Katz (1991, 13) identified a mechanism for association formation, antonym alignment via phrasal substitution. This shows co-occurrence via substitution, substitution yields antonym alignment and alignment leads to association. Antonyms are regarded as opposition in meaning.

### 1.5.3 Murphy and Andrew (1993)

The Adjective and noun can be combined in order to form a more complex concept that is the basis of the noun phrase's meaning e.g. **small** and **dog** combine to form the phrase i.e. **small dog**, meaning a dog of under average size.

Antonyms are gradable adjectives e.g. hot – cold; tall – short; big – small, large – little. Murphy and Andrew (1998, 301) indicate that the opposites represent an interesting lexical relation that is difficult to specify formally. In more work large number of more specific opposite relations have been suggested such as directional opposition, reversives and converses. Antonyms are gradable adjectives that stand in contrary on some dimensions such as hot and cold, tall and short. Hot is the opposite of cold because of their neutral temperature. Not every word has an opposite. Words have opposites only if one dimension of their meaning is particularly salient and if there is a word that is equivalent except for its value on the dimension e.g. words such as chair has no antonym because there is no clear single dimension between **chair** and **stool** on which the terms have opposing values. Chairs and stools are not opposite, although they differ in values e.g. stools have three legs and chairs have four legs. They are not contraries in the same way as the temperatures of hot and cold are. Even adjectives that are defined by a particular value on a dimension do not always have a very good antonym e.g. lukewarm or salting.

Antonym is a lexical relation between word forms, not a semantic relation between word meanings. According to Murphy and Andrew (1993, 303) rise and ascend are synonyms because they are close in meaning but fall is the antonym of rise and descend is the antonym of ascend. Big and large are the same in meaning but their opposites are little and small. Then big must be directly associated with little in semantic memory. Murphy and Andrew (1993, 303) points out that if antonyms were computed based on the word meanings then subjects would accept big and small as opposites.

Murphy and Andrew (1993, 303) indicates that other linguists such as Miller and his colleagues do not deny that there is a conceptual relation between antonyms. They argue that the conceptual opposition is a 'semantic reflex'. According to Murphy and Andrew (1993, 303) the morphological relation is primary and it carries with it a semantic consequence. This indicates that the antonym is not a semantic relation between word meaning but rather is a semantic relation between word forms.

Murphy and Andrew (1993, 304) indicates that word meanings are based on people's concept and conceptual relations. Word meanings are mentally represented as concepts. Antonyms are not based on conceptual relation because it will be difficult to explain their semantic properties.

Antonyms are words that differ on the value of one dimension such that they are equally far from some neutral point i.e. in opposite directions and on that dimension. According to Murphy (1993, 304) this relation is graded, so that words that are not perfectly equivalent on the other dimensions or words that are exactly equal distances from the neutral point can be semi-antonyms or less good antonyms e.g. hot – cool or ascend – fall. Some antonyms are associated in semantic memory.

Antonym may not be based purely upon meaning e.g. big and large differ in register or style. Big is less formal whereas large is more formal. Antonyms can be used as binary opposition i.e. alive and dead. Murphy and Andrew (1993, 305) points out that antonyms differ solely in one conceptual dimension. They differ in non-conceptual respects including morphology or discourse properties.

#### **1.5.4 Fellbaum (1995)**

Antonymous adjectives co-occur in the same sentence with frequencies far greater than predicted. But one can realize that words expressing antonymous concepts co-occur with higher than chance frequencies independent of the syntactic category.

There are certain words which are associated with norms such as good and new; bad and old but the associations are bi-directional. Fellbaum (281, 1995) points out that to account for this phenomenon, Deese (1962, 1964) proposed that antonymy is the semantic relation

that organizes adjectives in people's mental lexicon. Adjectives can be substituted. Fellbaum (283, 1995) dictates that the substitution hypothesis of antonymous adjectives as antonymous adjectives tend to co-occur in the same sentences in contexts where the adjectives are substituted for one another.

### **Antonymy in the Lexicon**

Fellbaum (1995, 283) indicates that adjectives are semantically organized via the antonymy relation that comes not only from association tests but also from careful examination of the English Lexicon undertaken by WordNet project (Miller et al, 1990).

Adjectives constitute the syntactic category that functions to modify nouns by assigning attributes to them. In most cases two values of an attribute are lexicalised expressing a bipolar opposition between two antonymous adjectives e.g. the values of attribute, length can be expressed by long and short. Fellbaum (2995, 284) points out that poles must be expressed by means of grading adverbs like very, extremely or hardly.

Fellbaum (1995, 284) indicates that Miller et al. (1990) noted that antonymy organizes not only the adjective lexicon but also certain sub-areas of the noun and verb lexicons e.g. live – die, increase – decrease denotes a change of physical state. Fellbaum (1995, 284) claims that there are many antonymous noun pairs that denote opposing or complementary states or properties such as life – death, beauty – ugliness, strength – weakness.

Antonymy is the principal semantic relation among adjectives because most adjectives express attributes. Verbs and nouns do have antonyms and they usually exist on the same base morpheme e.g. beauty – beautify, ugliness – uglify and their related antonymous adjectives are beautiful and ugly. Most antonymous verbs are stative or change of state verbs that can be expressed in attributes e.g. live – die; exclude – include, differ – equal.

Fellbaum (1995, 284) points out that there are noun and verb pairs that are related by some kind of opposition that is independent of an attribute expressable by an adjective pair e.g. love – hate, they are morphologically related to adjectives i.e. lovely/hateful. They have different meanings and they are not linked by the same 'clang' association. Like for

instance victory and defeat constitute an antonymous pair but the related adjectives; victorious and defeated are less strongly associated.

We have different kinds of semantic oppositions such as dead and alive which are contradictories, hot and cold which are gradables. Fellbaum (1995, 285) claims that the association data show that these differences do not seem to play a role in people's mental organization of these word pairs. Some contrastive attributes can be expressed by groups of related adjectives such as life – live – alive; death – die – dead. All these words express a concept that is in opposition to a concept expressed by all words in the other group. Fellbaum (1995, 285) claims that the lexical encoding of a given concept is to some extent arbitrary and subject to stylistic variation, e.g. the gold fish died; the gold fish is dead, the dead gold fish all express the same state of affairs, even though the gold fish's death is referred to once by a past tense verb; the second time by a predicative adjective and lastly by an attributive adjective. Fellbaum (1995, 285) indicates that words are different in categories, some may refer to an event e.g. death, some to a property like adjectives dead and verb die and a change of state.

The arbitrariness of the encoding of concepts into particular word classes can be seen when speakers understand new words formed from old ones by means of derivation affixes. Fellbaum (1995, 285) suggests the extended hypothesis of the co-occurrence hypothesis for semantically opposed nouns and verbs as follows: semantically opposed nouns tend to be used together in the same sentences, as do semantically opposed verbs.

Statistics were compiled to test the co-occurring word pairs. The research was based on the co-occurrence words belonging to a given word class. According to Fellbaum (1995, 285) the figures that were obtained still reflect clearly the phenomenon of co-occurrence and the considerable labour of calculating figures for each inflectional form did not seem to be warranted. Even if the co-occurrence hypothesis for semantically opposed concepts was tested; Fellbaum (1995, 289) claims that the second test entails that the semantic relation of antonymy organizes speaker's mental lexicons independent of the lexical category of the words that express antonymous concepts.

According to Fellbaum (1995, 292) semantically related pairs are the same but they differ to lexical class and morphological shape of their members. The data examined by Fellbaum (1995, 285) clearly repute the substitutability theory of learning. According to

Fellbaum (1995, 294) there is no evidence that the co-occurrence phenomenon provides a mechanism for children's learning of antonymous concepts. Word-class membership is learned from hearing words in a given syntactic environment. Fellbaum (1995, 294) indicates that there is no evidence that this syntactic learning goes along with the learning of the words' semantic relation to their antonyms nor that it is aided by the co-occurrence phenomenon.

## CHAPTER 2

### THE MORPHOLOGICAL ADJECTIVE

#### 2.1 THE AIM

The aim of this chapter is to look at the syntactic, morphological and semantic structure of the traditional adjectival category in Setswana, i.e. those adjectives which have a closed class of adjective stems. They will also be called morphological adjectives because their adjectival roots must have compulsory noun class agreement with the head noun in a noun phrase.

The Syntactic structure of these adjectival phrases will firstly be determined i.e. the adjectival phrase which consists of a determiner and an adjective. The syntactic distribution of the adjective in a clause will also be attempted. Secondly, the morphological structure of the determiner and the adjective will be established as well as the morphology of reduplication and transposition in the adjective.

Lastly, a semantic analysis of the adjective will be attempted with a semantic classification of the adjectival stems, the selection restrictions with the adjective stems as well as the issues of antonyms and individual-level and stage-level adjectives.

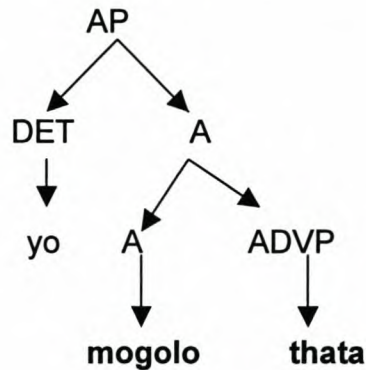
#### 2.2 THE SYNTACTIC STRUCTURE OF THE AP

##### 2.2.1 X-bar theory

Some of the general properties of phrase structure need to be stated, which come at the heart of syntax. Phrase structure is a way of capturing the structural relationships of the sentence through the concept of one or more constituents. Phrase structure is a hierarchy, in which each constituent successively consists of other constituents i.e. where the head dominates other constituents.

The model of phrase structure can be represented in a tree diagram, in a form of the X-bar syntax. The X-bar syntax is distinctive in claiming that every phrase conforms to certain requirements e.g. a phrase always contains at least a head and other possible

constituents. It is a principle of X-bar theory that phrases have heads of the same category as the phrase itself. The AP (adjective Phrase) **yô mogolo thata** (very old one), contains an Adjective (A) as head **mogolo** (old) and ADV **thata** (very) as complement.



This shows that the types of head in lexical phrase are related to word-classes. Each phrase consists of a head and other elements which is built up around a lexical category such as N from which it takes its name and its main properties:

**[Monna yo mogolo] o betsa ngwana**

(An old man beats the child)

This sentence demonstrates how the structure depends on lexical head of a phrase. The phrase structure of the sentence is linked to the lexicon, not just because the sentence eventually consists of actual words but also because the heads of the phrases within the sentence must be lexical categories and must suit the particular structure of which they form part.

### 2.2.2 The Structure of the AP

The X-bar structure of the phrase needs to include the level at which the close relationship between the zero category head and its complement can be captured. Complements are sisters of the lexical head and are governed by it. The rule for expanding  $X^1$  can be expressed as:

$X^1 \rightarrow X \text{ complement(s)}$ .



or as:

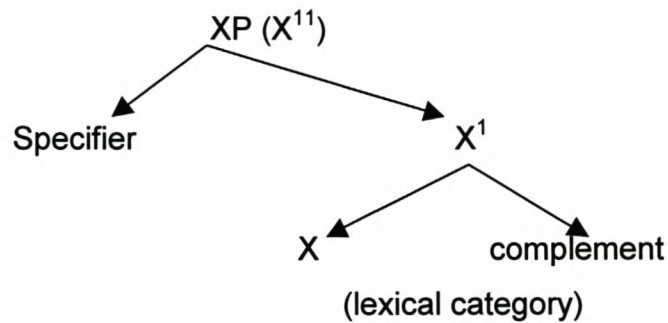
$X^1 \rightarrow \text{complement(s) } X$ .

As other word-classes the AP has a Head and a Complement:

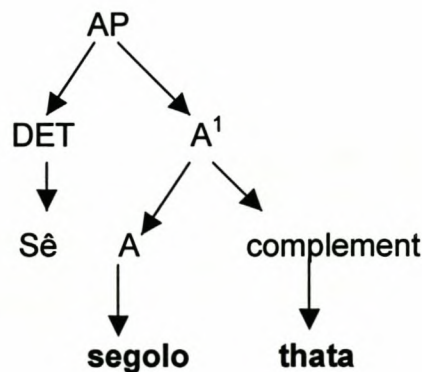
**Mogolo [thata]**

↓            ↓  
A        complement.

The rule of expanding  $A^1$  shows that the complement could occur after the head. The X-bar theory claims that all types of phrases need these two internal levels of structure. It proposes that all phrases in all languages share a simple cell-like structure with two levels to each phrase : one ( $X^{11}$ ) consists of the head and possible specifiers, the other ( $X^1$ ) consists of the head ( $X$ ) and possible complements:

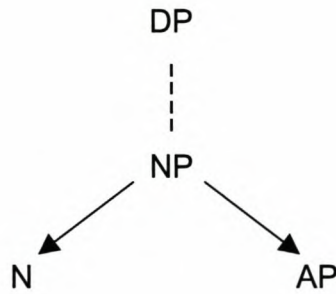


Let us look at this:



Here, the maximal projection of A is the AP which is [A<sup>2</sup>] above. The specifier of A<sup>1</sup> (SPEC) is the determiner and the complement of A is either a PP or ADP. The order of elements within the phrase is generalized so that a single statement specifies on which side of the head complements occur in all phrases of the languages i.e. the A comes before the ADV.

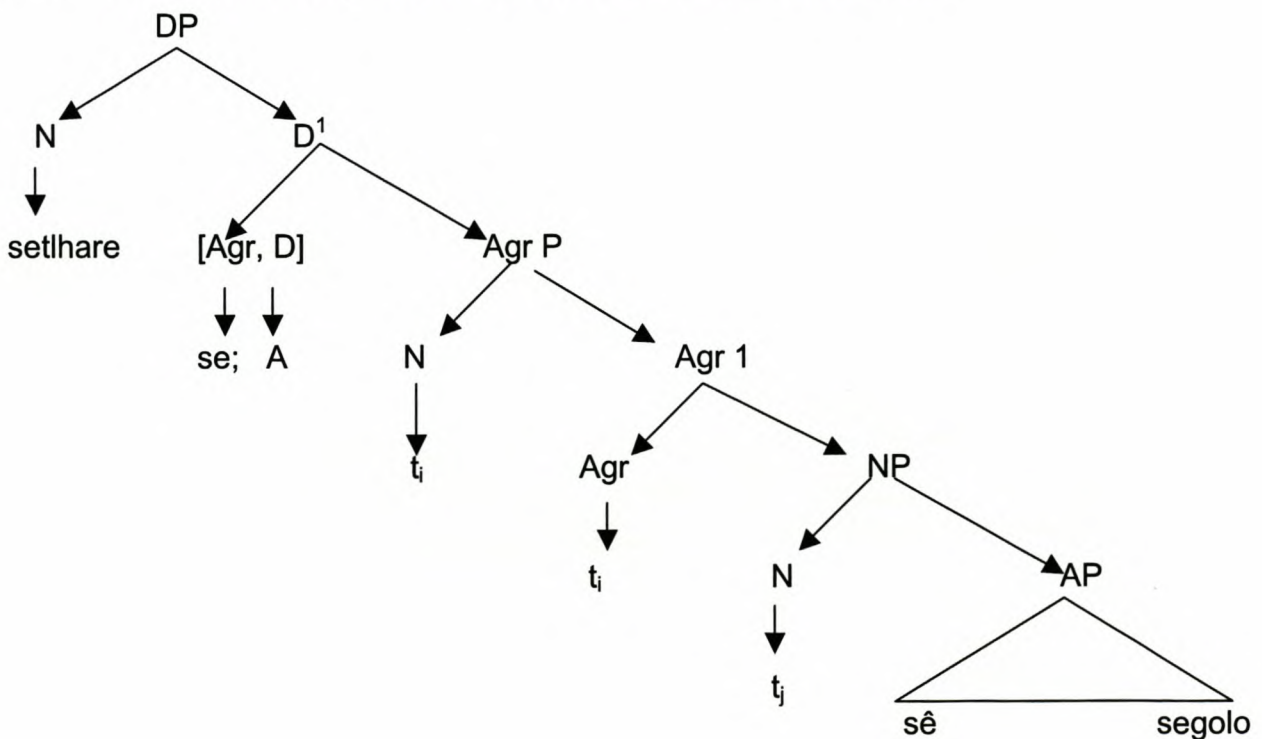
**2.2.3 The structure of the NP with an AP**



[Segokgo [sê sentsho] (a black spider).

In the structure above, DP, NP and AP are maximal projections. The head of NP is the noun segokgo. The AP is the complement of N above. The AP is [sê sentsho] which consists of a DET sê and the head of the AP which is sentsho in the example above.

**2.2.4 The determiner phrase with an AP and a demonstrative.**



This is the structure of a DP with a demonstrative and AP e.g.

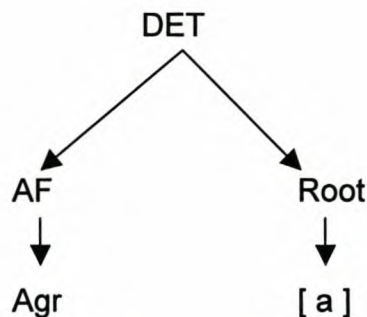
**[setlhare [sê [sê segolo]]**

(This big tree)

The structure above represents a determiner phrase (DP) with a determiner (D) as head. This determiner is represented by sê in the example above and it has the constituents Agr and D. The constituent D represents the determiner or demonstrative root [ a ] of Setswana. Together with this root A, an inflectional category Agr has to appear. This category Agr has a position as head of an Agr P where it has now been coindexed with its position to D with the index [j]. This agreement represents the agreement of class 7, i.e. se which is derived from the noun setlhare which is in class 7. The noun setlhare is the head of the lexical phrase NP above, but it now appears in its surface structure form next to D. It is coindexed with [i] to indicate its trace within NP. The AP [sê sêgolo) will have the same structure as indicated in par. 2.2.2 above.

### 2.2.5 The determiner in the AP.

The determiner which has to appear in an adjectival phrase has the same morphological structure as the demonstrative specifically the structure of the first proximity position of the demonstrative. This demonstrative has a demonstrative root [ a ] which appears after an agreement morpheme:



The combination of agreement with the root [ a ] will result in determiners such as follows:

[ se + a ] → sê

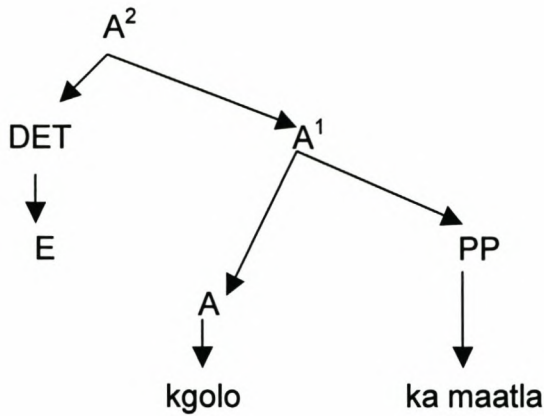
[ ba + a ] → ba

## 2.2.6 The complements of the adjective

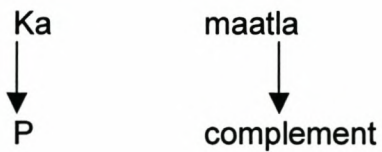
The complements of the adjective may be a PP with the preposition ka as head:

[ ntlo [ ê kgolo [ ka maatla ]

(A very big house)



In this structure the PP appears as complement of the A kgolo. The preposition P occurs as head of the PP:



Other examples of a PP with an Adjective:

- (i) [Monna [yo mosesane [ka bogale]]  
(A brave thin man)
- (ii) [Monna [yo mobe [ka boomo]]  
(A bad man on purpose)

An ADVP with adjective:

- (a) [ntlo [ê ntle [jalo]]  
(A beautiful house like that)

- (b) [setlhare [sê seleele [gagolo]]  
(A very long tree)
- (c) [Mosese [o mokhutshwane [gantle]]  
(A real small dress)

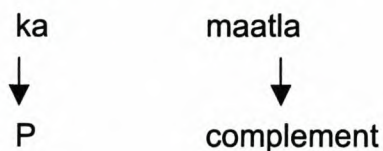
### 2.2.7 The adjective

Adjectives are morphologically marked with a noun class prefix in Nguni, Sotho and Venda, but with subjectival agreement in Tsonga. In Setswana the adjective is the head of the AP and such adjectives must have compulsory agreement with the head noun in an NP, e.g.

Setlhako [sê [se –golo]  
(Big shoe)

The maximal projection of A is AP. The specifier of A is the determiner sê with the head A [se – golo]. The adjective may also have a complement such as PP or ADVP e.g.

- (i) [Mosimane [yo moleele [ka – maatla]]  
(Very tall boy)

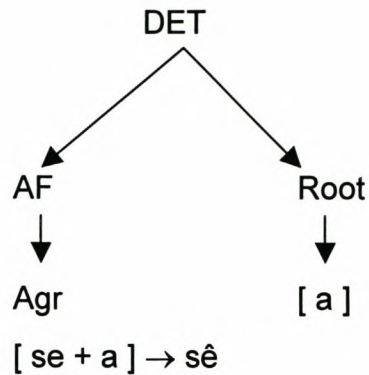


- (ii) [Dikgomo [tse dintsho [ruri]]  
(Really black cattle)

### 2.3 The Morphology of the determiner

The determiner has the same morphological structure as the demonstrative structure of the first proximity position of the demonstrative. This demonstrative has a demonstrative root [ a ] which appears after an agreement morpheme and the determiner has a compulsory agreement with the head noun in a noun phrase. The determiner is a

combination of an agreement and the root. The type of agreement is the same as the subjective agreement:



Let us look at all the derivations of the classes where the determiner has an agreement with root [ a ]:

Class 1 : Agr S O - + root A → yo

Class 2 : Agr S ba - + root A → ba

Class 3 : Agr S o - + root A → o

Class 4 : Agr S e - + root A → e

Class 5 : Agr S ie - + root A → le –

Class 6 : Agr S a + root A → a

Class 7 : Agr S se + root A → se –

Class 8 : Agr S di + root A → tse

Class 9 : Agr S e + root A → e

Class 10 : Agr S di + root A → tse

Class 11 : Agr S lo + root A → lo

Class 13 : Agr S bo + root A → bo

Class 15, 16, 17 and 18 Loc Agr + root A → mo

When adjectives appear as nominal modifiers, a determiner has to appear in the specifier position.

## 2.4 THE MORPHOLOGY OF THE ADJECTIVE

2.4.1 **Morphological categories:** lexical category such as A or N or V, affix (prefix or suffix); stem (root with an affix) and root which does not need an affix.

### 2.4.1.1 Lexical category

The lexical items occur in a lexicon. The lexicon contains all the information that the speakers of the language have internalised concerning the lexical items of their languages.

There are major classes of lexical items such as Nouns, Verbs and Adjectives. These three lexical items must be distinguished from all other lexical items. The nouns, verbs and adjectives are the only lexical items which everybody has agreed on. In African languages all nouns are found in noun classes e.g. motho, umntu, muthu, etc. Adjectives in Setswana are very few and in African languages adjectives may be expressed in different ways such as the adjective stems:

- holo / - golo / - khulu (big)

In other African languages we find nominal relative stems which are adjectives such as:

Monate / mmandi (nice)

The major classes of lexical items constitute open classes i.e. one may always add new lexical items to these three lexical items.

### 2.4.1.2 Affixes (prefix or suffix)

Morphemes are the smallest units of linguistic form which cannot be divided into smaller linguistic units. Words are composed of morphemes such as the prefix; suffix and the root.

There are two types of affixes in Setswana i.e. prefixes and suffixes. Prefixes have to occur before root as in [mo – golo] where mo is the prefix. Suffixes have to appear after the roots as in [mogologadi] where gadi is the suffix.

#### 2.4.1.3 Stem (root with an affix)

The stem is a combination of the root and affixes e.g. [mo – golo] and [mo – golo – gadi] above are stems.

#### 2.4.1.4 Root

In the case of nouns or adjectives, the root will appear as lexical item e.g. without any morphemes. In Xhosa nouns such as [abantu] (people) consist of three elements:

[ a + ba + ntu]

The root ntu will be the lexical item with the category name of noun. In Setswana adjectives such as montsho will consist of two elements i.e. a prefix mo and a root ntsho:

[mo + ntsho]

This adjective may have three elements when the suffix is added to it:

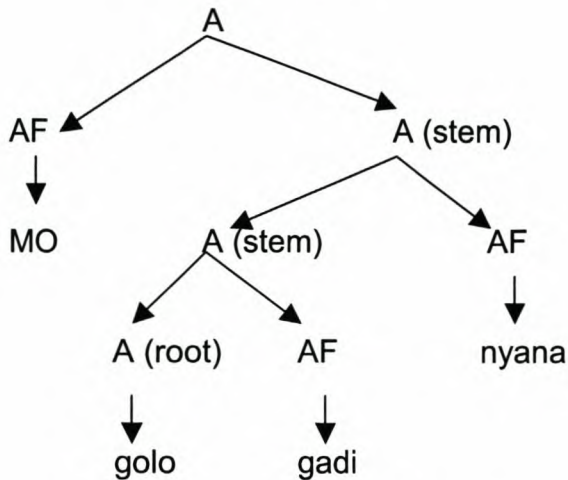
[mo + ntsho + nyana]

But when we add the suffix the root will remain –ntsho.

#### 2.4.2 **The morphological structure of the adjective.**

When the adjective appears as a nominal modifier, a determiner has to appear in the specifier position. The morphological structure of the adjective without its DET shows a noun class prefix as an agreement element in an affix derived from a head noun together with an adjectival stem:





[ke [mosadi [yo [mo – golo – gadi – nyana]

(Very little old woman)

In the structure above, the affix contains the agreement mo which is derived from the head noun mosadi in Class 1. The head of this adjective contains a stem with a root golo. This stem in turn consists of two stems, i.e. the first stem is [ - golo - gadi] with an affix [gadi] and the second stem is [ - golo – gadi - nyana] where an additional suffix may only appear in this specific position, i.e. the order of these suffixes after an adjectival root is fixed.

### 2.4.3 The noun class prefix

All adjective stems in Setswana must compulsory appear with the noun class prefix of the head noun in an NP as an agreement morpheme i.e. an agreement prefix on the adjective stem. The noun-class prefixes are arranged according to recognized numbers in Setswana. A class prefix can be regarded as a morpheme which characterises a certain group of nouns belonging to a certain noun class.

<u>Class</u>	<u>Example</u>
1. mo -	Mosadi [yo mogolo] o jele (An old woman has eaten)
2. ba -	Basadi [ba bagolo] ba jele (Old women have eaten)
3. mo -	Monwana [o mokhutshwane] o robegile (Short finger has broken)

- |          |          |  |
|----------|----------|--|
| 4.       | me -     | Menwana [e mekhutshwane] e robegile<br>(Short fingers have broken)                             |
| 5.       | le -     | Lerapo [le lesweu] le robegile<br>(A white bone has broken)                                    |
| 6.       | ma -     | Marapo [a masweu] a robegile<br>(White bones have broken)                                      |
| 7.       | se -     | Setlhare [se seleele] se robegile<br>(Tall tree has broken)                                    |
| 8.       | di -     | Ditlhare [tse dileele] di robegile<br>(Tall trees have broken)                                 |
| 9.       | n -      | Nku [e nnye] e jele<br>(Small sheep has eaten)   |
| 10.      | di (n -) | Dinku [tse dinnye] di jele<br>(Small sheep have eaten)   |
| 11.      | lo -     | Logong [lo loleele] le robegile<br>(A long wood has broken)                                    |
| 13.      | bo -     | Bogobe [bo bosweu] bo fedile<br>(The white porridge has finished)                              |
| 15.      | go -     | Go - ja [mo gogolo]<br>(Eating too much)   |
| 16,17,18 | go -     | Felo [mo gogolo]<br>(The place which is big)<br>Felo [mo gontsho]<br>(The place which is dark) |

#### 2.4.4 The noun class prefix of class 9

The prefix of class 9 is a nasal morpheme which may be represented as [n -] because it may have different phonetic forms and with stems with more than one syllable. It can be used with a head noun.

e.g. [ke ntlo [ê [ntšwa]  
(It is a new house)

This nasal morpheme has an influence on some adjective stems beginning with certain consonants:

#### Monosyllabic

N – šwa → ntšwa (new)

[Ke [ntlo [ê [n – tšwa]  
(It is a new house)

n – be → mpe (bad; ugly)

[ke [ntlo [ê [m – pe]  
(It is a bad house)

#### Polysyllabic

n – golo → kgolo (big)

[Ke [ntlo [ê [Kgolo]  
(It is a big house)

n – leele → telele (tall, long)

[ke [tsela [ê [telele]  
(It is a long road)

n – sesane → tshesane (thin)

[Ke tsela [ê [tshesane]  
(It is a thin road)

n – fitshwa → phitšhwa (dark brown)

[Ke Kgomo [ê [phitšhwana]  
(It is a dark brown cow)

n – hibidu → khibidu (red)

[Ke [ntlo [ê [khibidu]

(It is a red house)

n – raro → tharo (three)

[Ke [nku [tse tharo]

(Three sheep)

n – webu → kwebu (grey)

[Ke [pitse [e [kwebu]

(It is a grey horse)

When the adjective stem already begins with a nasal consonant, this nasal is retained together with the prefix of class 9 if the adjective is a monosyllabic stem except in the case of ntle the prefix falls away:

n – ntle → ntle (beautiful)

[Ke [ntlo [ê ntle]

(Beautiful house)

n – nye → nnye (small)

[Ke [nku [ê nnye]

(Small sheep)

n – ngwe → nngwe (other)

[Ke [pitse [ê [nngwe]

(Other horse)

#### 2.4.5 The noun prefix of class 8 and class 10

The noun prefix of class 10 also appears with a nasal consonant and this nasal consonant has the same influence as above on the adjective stem. The element di- of the prefix di (n-) may however, sometimes fall away:

### Monosyllabic

n - šwa → ntšwa – dintšwa (new)

[Ke [dintlo [tse [di – ntšwa]

(They are new houses)

n – be → mpe – dimpe (bad, ugly)

[Ke [dintlo [tse [di – mpe]

(They are bad houses)

### Polysyllabic

N – golo → kgolo – dikgolo

[Dikgomo [tse [kgolo]

(Big cattle)

[Dikgomo [tse [di – kgolo]

(Big cattle)

n – leele → telele – ditelele

[Dinoga [tse [di – telele]

(Long snakes)

n – sesane → tshesane – ditshesane

[Ditsela [tse [di – tshesane]

(Thin roads)

n – fitshwa → phitshwa – diphitshwa

[Dikgomo [tse [di – phitshwa]

(Dark-brown cattle)

n – webu → kwebu – dikwebu

[Dipitse [tse [di – kwebu]

n – hibidu → khibidu – dikhibidu

[Dintlo [tse [di – khibidu]

The element di- of the prefix din- may fall away e.g. always with numbers 2 – 6 but it is not compulsory in other cases:

[Dikgomo [tse [pedi]  
 \*[Dikgomo [tse [dipedi]

but it is acceptable to say:

[Dikgomo [tse [kgolo]  
 [Dikgomo [tse [dikgolo]

In some instances the prefix of Class 8 behave in the same way as the prefix of class 10 e.g.

Class 10 : Dipodi tse tharo  
 Class 8 : Dithlare tse tharo  
 \*Dithlare tse ditharo

There are different dialects in Setswana such as:

Sekgatla, Serolong, Sehurutshe, Setlhaping, Sengwaketse, etc. In Sekgatla dialect the class 8 prefix has some influence:

Dithlare tse [dileelee]  
 (Tall trees)

Dintlo tse [di-mpe]  
 (Bad houses)

Dithlare tse [di-kgolo]  
 (Big trees)

Dikala tse [di-tshesane]

But in Serolong, Sehurutshe and Setlhaping dialects the Class 8 prefix may also have some influence:

Ditlhare tse [di-telele]  
(Tall trees)

Ditulo tse [n-tsho]  
Ditulo tse [di-n-tsho]  
(Black chairs)

Ditlhare tse [di-šwa]  
Ditlhare tse [di-n-tšwa]

Ditlhare tse [kgolo]  
Ditlhare tse [di-golo]  
Ditlhare tse [di-kgolo]  
(Big trees)

Thus, in some instances the prefix of Class 8 behaves in the same way as the prefix of Class 10. It is possible to use the prefix of class 10 with the altered adjective stem and the same alternative may be found with Class 8.

Class 8 : Ditlhako tse [di-n-tsho]  
(Black shoes)

Class 10 : Dikgomo tse [di-n-tsho]  
(Black cattle)

#### **2.4.6 The locative noun classes in the Infinitive**

The locative classes and the infinitive use the same agreement on the adjective i.e. go:

Infin: go-ja [mo [go-golo]  
(Eating too much)

Loc: felo [mo [go-golo]  
(Place which is too big)

The first phrase has an infinitival nominal [go-ja] as head. In the first [go] is derived from the infinitive which has a prefix go:

Go tshameka [go [go-golo]  
(Playing too much)

The second phrase has a locative noun as head of the NP:

1. [Felo [mo [go-golo]  
(Place which is too big)

The locative may be a locative noun with -eng as a suffix. The determiner of the agreement of Class 9 has been used after a locative noun e.g.

2. Thabeng [e Kgolo]  
(At the big mountain)

3. Thabeng [mo [go-golo]  
(On the big mountain)

In (3) the locative agreement mo has been used as the complement of the noun head thabeng.

The determiner can be kwa, fa or mo e.g.

Felo [kwa [go-golo]  
(From a large/big place)

Felo [mo [go-golo]  
(On a large place)

Felo [fa [go-golo]  
(At a large place)

Kwa, fa and mo are locative demonstratives which may appear before or after locative nouns:



Before locative nouns:

[Mo thabeng]  
(On the mountain)

[Kwa sekolong]  
(From the school)

[Fa ntlong]  
(At the house)

After locative nouns:

[Thabeng mo]  
(On the mountain)

[sekolong kwa]  
(From the school)

[ntlong fa]  
(At the house)

Here, the emphasis is on the locative nouns.

#### **2.4.7 The noun class prefix of Class 1 and 3**

With the adjective stem beginning with b the stem assimilates with the prefix: mo-botlana  
→ mmotlana (small).

[ngwana yo [mmotlana]  
(Younger child)

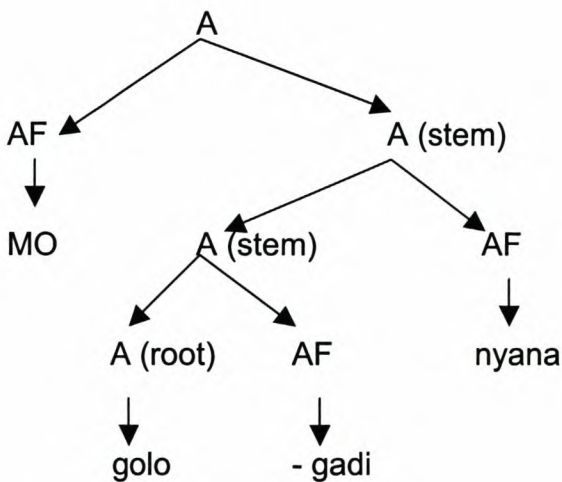
Motse [o mmotlana]  
(Smaller village)

Assimilation occurs when the prefixal element mo occurs before the stem commencing in b, i.e. \*mob-mm-. This assimilation occurs with the noun prefix mo- of Class 1 and 3.:

Mmutla [o mmutlana]  
(Smaller hare)

### 2.4.8 The adjectival stem with its suffixes

An adjective may be divided into two parts, i.e. prefix and the stem. The adjectival prefixes, except for Class 16; 17 and 18 look exactly the same as the noun class prefixes. The adjective stem is further divided into the adjective root and the suffixes -ana; -nyana or -gadi as follows:



#### The suffixes -ana and -nyana

##### Diminution of the adjectival quality.

The diminutive suffix appears with two meanings with the adjectives. The meaning of some of the adjectival stems may be modified by the addition of suffixes -ana and -nyana.

-ntsho → ntshonyana  
 ↓                    ↓  
 (black)    (slightly black)

-kima → kimana  
 ↓                    ↓  
 (big)    (slightly big)

When the suffix noun is used for instance with the stem -hibidu, the meaning of slightly red or reddish is conveyed:

- (a) Koloji [e khibitswana]  
(Slightly red car)
- (b) Thaere ya koloi [e kimana]  
(Slightly big tyre)
- (c) Pule [yo mokimana]  
(Slightly big Pule)

The suffix -nyana also conveys this meaning when it is attached to some adjectival stems:

- 1) Monna [yo mokhutshwanyana]  
(A very short man)
- 2) Setlhare [se setalanyana]  
(A light green/true tree)

Adjectival diminutives with the suffix -nyana sometimes signify a diminution of the idea expressed by noun qualified. Such forms are often used with derogatory significance, especially when both noun and adjective are in diminutive form:

- 1) Dipodi [tse pedinyana]  
(Only two little goats)
- 2) Kgomo [e ntshonyana]  
(A miserable little black cow)

### Feminine:

The basic form of the stem signifies the masculine gender and the diminutive form with suffix -ana signifies the feminine. The suffix -ana is used together with the adjectival stems which denote colour to indicate femininity with regard to animals:

-ntsho > tshwana → kgomo [e tshwana]  
(Black female cow)

- tilodu > tilotsana → kgomo [e tilotsana]  
(A black white specks female cow)

- hunou > khunwana → kgomo [e khunwana]  
(A red, bay female cow)

### The Suffix -gadi:

#### Feminine:

In Setswana the suffix -gadi has an extremely limited application as indicator of feminine gender by denoting the generic names of animals:

tau	>	taugadi
↓		↓
(lion)		(female lion)

#### Augmentative:

The suffix may also refer to the largeness of the objects:

(a) Kgolo > kgologadi (very big)  
(big)

Monna o agile ntlo [e kgologadi]  
(The man has built a very big house)

(b) mpe > mpegadi  
(bad, evil) (very bad/evil)

Pelo [e mpegadi]  
(A very bad/evil heart)

### 2.4.9 The stems -ngwe and -fe.

These stems may appear as quantifiers e.g.

1. Batho bangwe  
(Certain people)
2. Batho bafe  
(Which people)

In Setswana a set of agreement morphemes may appear with the stem -ngwe and -fe:

Batho bangwe  
(Some people)

These stems may appear as adjectives:

Ke batho ba bangwe  
(They are some people)

Ke batho ba bafe  
(They are which people)

These stems -ngwe and -fe may also appear in all noun class prefixes, except the stem -fe in Class 9:

	<b>Class</b>	<b>Stem –ngwe</b>	<b>-fe</b>
1.	mo-	mongwe	mofe?
2.	ba-	Bangwe	bafe?
3.	mo-	Mongwe	mofe?
4.	me-	Mengwe	mefe?
5.	le-	Lengwe	lefe?
6.	ma-	Mangwe	mafe?
7.	se-	Sengwe	sefe?
8.	di-	Dingwe	dife?
9.	n-	Nngwe	efe?
10.	di (n)-	Dingwe	dife?
11.	lo-	Longwe	lofe?
13.	bo-	Bongwe	bofe?
15.	go-	Gongwe	gofe?
16,17,18	go-	Gongwe	gofe?

The stem -ngwe may appear in this form:

- (a) Motho mongwe  
Motho yo mongwe

The stem –fe may appear in this form:

- Ke motho ofe?  
Ke motho yo mofe?

The stem -ngwe may appear in both two forms as above but the stem -fe does not appear in some instances in both forms:

Ke ntlo efe?

(It is which house)

The stem -fe has been used in a question form i.e. when one wants to know or clarify something.

#### 2.4.10 Reduplication

Many adjective stems can be reduplicated depending on the emphasis:

Meno a [masweusweu]

(Very white teeth)

Metsi a [mantsintsi]

(Very much water)

Monna yo [mokhutshwakhutshwane]

(Very short man)

Mmala o [montshontsho]

(Very black colour)

Mosadi yo [montlentle]

(Very beautiful woman)

Mosese o [mohibiduhibidu]

(Very red dress)

The reduplicated adjective stems indicate different intensifications. There are some adjectival stems which cannot be reduplicated as in the following examples:

\*Ngwana yo [mongwemongwe]

(Only another child)

\*Matlapa a [matlhanotlhano]

(Only five stones)

\*Marapo a [mabedibedi]

(Only two bones)

## 2.5 SEMANTICS OF THE ADJECTIVES

### 2.5.1 Semantic classification of the adjectival root

In examining the semantic behaviour of adjectives it might seem reasonable to look first at what concepts are expressible in a language adjectivally. Dixon (1982) described an approach where he takes a field – descriptive perspective on the taxonomic classification of adjectives. Dixon (1982) distinguishes adjectives according to the general semantic field associated with the term e.g. he arrives at the following classes for adjectives from cross-linguistic study:

1. Dimension: big, little, large, small, long, short.
2. Physical property: hard, soft, heavy, light.
3. Colour: red, green, blue.
4. Human propensity: jealous, happy, kind, proud, cruel.
5. Age: new, old, young.
6. Value: good, bad, excellent, fine, delicious.
7. Speed: fast, quick, slow.
8. Difficulty: difficult, easy.
9. Similarity: alike, similar.
10. Qualification: possible, probable, likely.

Such classes can be very useful for descriptive purposes. In the case of African Languages, the issue of the adjective is not very clear. There are various categories that may have the meaning of adjectives but they differ in form. The following categories frequently imply an adjectival meaning on the word:



1. Dimension:

- golo (big)
- nnye (small)
- kalo (that size)
- kana (this size)
- kgaraga (big and round)
- khutshwane (short)
- kima (thick, stout)
- leele/telele (long, tall)
- namagadi (female)
- phaphathi (flat, broad, wide)
- sesane (thin)
- setšwa (hornless : animal)
- tonanyana (male)

2. Age:

- botlana (smaller, younger, junior)
- gologolo (old)
- šwa (young, new, modern)
- tala (young, tender)

3. Colour:

- bududu (blue-grey)
- butswa (grey-white)
- fatshwa (black and white)
- fitshwa (dark brown; horses and cattle)
- gwaripana (red and whitish)
- gweba (red and white speckled)
- hibidu (red)
- hunou (reddish-brown)
- khukhwa (brown to yellow; yellow to brown; goats)
- nala (red and white)
- ngolo (black; goat)

- ntsho (black)
- purwa (black animal)
- tala (green/blue)
- ramaga (mottled)
- rokwa (brown)
- setlha (yellow light; complexioned)
- tilodi (black with white specks)
- tlhaba (brown to yellow, yellow to brown: (cattle))
- tuba (black and grey)
- tsiang (what colour)
- sweu (white)
- ntlhwa (black)

4. Value:

- ntle (beautiful)
- tala (unripe, raw)
- be' (bad, wicked, vile)

5. Number:

- ngwe (one, other, some, certain, another)
- ntsi (plenty, many, much)
- nngwefela (one)
- bedi (two)
- raro (three)
- ne (four)
- tlhano (five)
- rafaro (six)

### 2.5.2 Selection restrictions

Selection restrictions refer to the combination of a head noun with an AP: in such a NP, certain adjectives are restricted in their use i.e. they may not appear with certain nominal classes.

Adjectives which are restricted with certain nouns:

1. Adjectives indicating dimension.

(a) Mass nouns

In Setswana it is possible that some adjectives may occur with certain nouns i.e. Mass nouns:

(1) Metsi a [mantsi]  
(Much water)

(2) Mašwi a [mannye]  
(little milk)

(3) Madi a [mantsi]  
(much blood)

(4) Mašwi a [otlhe]  
(all the milk)

but in (4) above the mass noun has appeared with quantifier -otlhe.

Mass nouns may be either abstract or concrete. Abstract nouns are distinguished from concrete nouns. Abstract nouns refer to a quality or concept whereas concrete nouns exist as something real or solid.

(1) Concrete mass nouns:

Mašwi [a mannye]  
(little milk)

Metsi [a kalo]  
(That size of water)

Madi [a mantsi]  
(much blood)

There are other concrete mass nouns which do not accept some adjectives:

-golo (big) : \*Metsi [a magolo]  
(Big water)

-khutshwane (short) : \*Metsi [a makhutshwane]  
(Short water)

-kgaraga (big and round) : \*Madi [a makgaraga]  
(Big and round blood)

(2) Abstract nouns:

-nnye (little) : Botlhale [bo bonnye]  
(little wisdom)

-ntsi (much) : Bogale [jo bontsi]  
(much brave)  
: Dingalo [tse dinnye]  
(little tiring work)

These abstract nouns do accept adjectives as indicated above.

Some abstract nouns do not accept some adjectives:

-Kima (big) : \*Botlhale [jo bokima]  
(Big wisdom)

-telele/leele (long; tall) : \*Botlhale [jo boleele]  
(Long/tall wisdom)

(b) Dimension with Animals:

-golo (big) : Kgomo [e kima]

(Big cow)

-nnye (small) : Kgomo [e nnye]

(Small cow)

-namagadi (female) : Kgomo [e namagadi]

(Female cow)

-tonanyana (male) : Kgomo [e tonanyana]

(Male cow)

-sotšwa (hornless) : Kgomo [e tshotšwa]

(Hornless cow)

The adjective –sotšwa only refers to animals. There are adjectives indicating dimension which do not appear with animals:

-Khutshwane (short) : \*Podi [e Khutshwane]

(Short goat)

-telele/leele (long; tall) : \*Kgomo [e telele]

(Long cow)

-phaphathi (flat) : \*Kgomo [e phaphathi]

(Flat cow)

(c) With Gender:

-namagadi (female)

-tonanyana (male)

-namagadi (female) : Podi [e namagadi]

(Female goat)

: Kgomo [e namagadi]

(Female cow)

: Ntšwa [e namagadi]

(Female dog)

- tonanyana (male) : Nku [e tonanyana]  
(Male sheep)
- : Pitse [e tonanyana]  
(Male horse)
- : Kgomo [e tonanyana]  
(Male cow)

These genders are used with animals only. We cannot say:

\*Basadi [ba banamagadi]

(Female women)

## 2. Adjective indicating age:

Adjective indicating age refer to food; plants, people or physical objects.

### 1. Food:

- tala (tender) : Nama [e tala]  
(Tender meat)
- gologolo (old) : Bogobe [bo bogologolo]  
(Old porridge)
- tala (young) : Leungo [le letala]  
(Young fruit)
- šwa (new) : Dijo [tse dišwa]  
(New food)

but we cannot say:

\*Nama [e ntšwa]  
(New or modern meat)

\*Bogobe [bo botala]  
(Tender porridge)

### 1. People:

- gologolo : Monna [yo mogologolo]  
(An old man)

-šwa (young, modern) : Mosetsana [yo mošwa]

(Young girl)

-botlana (smaller, younger) : Ngwana [yo mmotlana]

(Younger child)

but we cannot say:

- tala (tender) : \*Monna [yo motala]

(Tender man)

## 2. Plants:

-tala (young) : Setlhare [se setala]

(Young tree)

-šwa (new) : Sethunya [se sešwa]

(New flower)

-gologolo (old) : Setlhare [se segologolo]

(Old tree)

## 3. Physical objects:

Artifacts:

-šwa (new) : Mosese [o mošwa]

(New dress)

: Sejanaga [se sešwa]

(New car)

-gologolo (old) : Ntlo [e kgologolo]

(old house)

Tafole [e kgologolo]

(an old table)

but we cannot say:

-tala (young) : \*Tafole [e tala]

(Young table)

## 3. Colour adjectives:

Adjectives may appear with natural phenomena, Humans, animals, food, artifacts:

1. Natural phenomena:

- tala (green/blue) : Loapi [lo lotala]  
(Blue sky)
- setlha (light yellow) : Mmu [o mosetlha]  
(Light yellow soil)
- ntsho (black) : Mmu [o montsho]  
(Black soil)
- hibidu (red) : Letsatsi [le lehibidu]  
(Red sun)
- sweu (white) : Ngwedi [o mosweu]  
(White moon)

2. Humans:

- ntsho (black) : Monna [yo montsho]  
(Black man)
- setlha (light yellow) : Mosadi [yo mosetlha]  
(Light yellow woman)
- sweu (white) : Motho [yo mosweu]  
(White person)

3. Animals:

- sweu (white) : Mmutla [o mosweu]  
(White hare)
- ntsho (black) : Katse [e ntsho]  
(Black cat)
- ngolo (black) : Podi [e ngolo]  
(Black goat)
- rokwa (brown) : Kgomo [e thokwa]  
(Brown cow)
- nala (red and white) : Kgomo [e nala]  
(Red and white cow)
- fitshwa (dark brown) : Pitse [e phitshwa]  
(Dark brown horse)



- fatshwa (black and white) : Phologolo [e phatshwa]  
(Black and white animal)
- pirwa (black) : Nku [e pirwa]  
(black sheep)
- butswa (grey-white) : Ntšwa [e putswa]  
(Grey-white dog)
- tlhaba (brown to yellow) : Kgomo [e tlhaba]  
(Brown to yellow cow)
- tuba (black and grey) : Poo [e tuba]  
(Black and grey bull)

4. Food:

- tala (green/blue) : Morogo [o motala]  
(Green vegetable)
- sweu (white) : Mašwi [a masweu]  
(White milk)
- hibidu (red) : Leungo [le lehibidu]  
(Red fruit)
- ntsho (black) : Morogo [o montsho]  
(Black vegetable)

5. Artifacts:

- sweu (white) : Mosese [o mosweu]  
(White dress)
- koi : [e tshweu]  
(White car)
- sejana : [se sesweu]  
(White plate)
- hididu (red) : lobati [lo lohibidu]  
(Red door)  
: Pitsa [e khibidu]  
(Red pot)
- tala (blue/green) : Kuwane [e tala]  
(Blue hat)

: Borukgwe [jo botala]  
 (Blue trouser)  
 -ntsho (black) : Ntlo [e ntsho]  
 (Black house)

4. Adjectives indicating value with any physical objects; human, plants:

1. Physical objects:

-ntle (beautiful) : Mosisi [o montle]  
 (Beautiful hair)  
 : Mosese [o montle]  
 (Beautiful dress)  
 : Sejanaga [se sentle]  
 (Beautiful car)  
 : Ntlo [e ntle]  
 (Beautiful house)  
 : Loswana [lo lontle]  
 (Beautiful spoon)

(b) Humans:

-ntle (beautiful) : Mosadi [yo montle]  
 (beautiful woman)  
 : Ngaka [e ntle]  
 (beautiful doctor)  
  
 : Mooki [yo montle]  
 (beautiful nurse)

(c) Plants:

-ntle (beautiful) : Tlhaga [e ntle]  
 (beautiful grass)  
 : Malomo [a mantle]  
 (beautiful flowers)

The adjective -be (ugly/bad) with Artifacts, people, natural phenomena:

1. Artifacts:

-be (ugly/bad) : Thipa [e mpe]  
 (bad knife)  
 : Ntlo [e mpe]

2. Natural phenomena:

: Thaba [e mpe]  
 (bad road)  
 : Mmu [o mobe]  
 (bad soil)

3. People:

: Mosadi [yo mobe]  
 (an ugly woman)  
 : Monna [yo mpe]  
 (an evil man)

4. Adjectives indicating value:

Adjectives indicating value with -tala : plants and food:

1. Plants:

-tala (tender, unripe, raw)

Merogo [e metala]  
 (raw vegetables)

2. Food:

Dijo [tse ditala]  
 (tender food)

Nama [e tala]  
 (tender meat)

5. Adjectives indicating number:

They may appear with any count noun but not with mass nouns:

- raro (three) → Dinamune [tse tharo]  
(Three oranges)
- bedi (two) → Mae [a mabedi]  
(Two eggs)
- ngwe (other) → Batho [ba bangwe]  
(Other people)
- rataro (six) → Masimo [a maratara]  
(Six fields)

but we cannot say:

- \*Metsi a mararo  
(Three water)
- \*Madi a mane  
(Four blood)

### 2.5.3 Individual-level and stage-level

In their very nature adjectives are generally taken to denote states. Thus the distinction is generally between two types of states i.e. individual-level and stage-level states. When looking at the adjectives in Setswana such as leele/telele (tall, long), some might be thought of as properties that an individual retains, more or less, throughout its lifetime and can be identified with the individual directly. Properties such as hungry, sick and clean are usually identified with non-permanent states of individuals though of as properties that an individual retains and can be identified with individual directly.

Adjectives may appear with two levels, i.e. individual-level and stage-level, but stage-level is not accepted by the adjectives in Setswana:

#### Individual-level:

- golo (old) : Monna yo mogolo  
(An old man)
- khutshwane : Mosadi yo mokhutshwane  
(Short woman)
- be' (ugly or bad) : Ntlo e mpe  
(Ugly house)

-nnye (small) : Logong lo lonnye

(Small wood)

-ntsi (many/much) : Batho ba bantsi

(Many people)

Adjectives do not accept the stage-level; in a verb this stage-level is accepted because properties such as hungry, sick and clean can be identified with non-permanent states of individuals and being called stage-level predicates.

#### 2.5.4 Antonyms

The adjectives may also be classified according to their role in antonyms. Antonym per definition refer to lexemes that are opposite in meaning to other lexemes in the same language:

(a) Descriptive adjectival stems:

Stem	Class	Example
-golo/nnye	1	Monna yo mogolo/monnye (A big/small man)
-telele/khutshwane	2	Basimane ba batelele/bakhutshwane (Tall or short boys)
-kima/sesane	3	Leoto le lekima/lesesane (Thick/thin foot)
-gologolo/šwa	8	Diaparo tse dikgologolo/dišwa (Very old/new clothes)
-ntle/be'	10	Dintlo tse dintle/dimpe (Beautiful/ugly houses)

(b) Colour adjectives

Antonyms in colour adjectives are very limited in Setswana:

Stem	Class	Example
-ntsho/sweu	8	Diaparo tse dintsho/disweu (Black/white clothes)

## 2.6 TRANSPOSITION

The term transposition refers to the morphological process of lexical derivation in which the lexicon may transpose any number of any major lexical class to any other major lexical class by providing it with specific features. In this case, the category adjective will be looked into:

A → V – Sweufala (become white)

- sweu – fal – a

[< - sweu 'white']

Ntlo e sweufala ka mmala

(The house becomes white in colour)

A → V – ntshofala (become white)

- ntsho – fal – a

[< - ntsho 'black']

Monna o ntshofala ka letsatsi

(The man becomes black in the sun)

A → V – setlhafala (become light yellow)

- setlha – fal – a

[< - setlha becomes 'light yellow']

Maoto a setlhafala mariga

(Feet become light yellow in winter)

A → V – ntšhwafala (become young)

-ntšhwa – fal – a

[< - ntšhwa 'young']

Mosadi o ntšhwafala motshegare

(The woman becomes young during the day)

A → V – ntsifala

-ntsi – fal – a (become many)

[< - ntsi 'many']

Batho ba ntsifala monongwaga

(People become many this year)

A → V – leelefala (become tall)

-leele – fal – a

[< teele 'tall']

Setlhare se leelefala selemo

(The tree becomes tall in summer)

A → V – kima-fala (become big)

-kima – fal – a

[< - kima 'big']

Kgomo e kima-fala selemo

(The cow becomes big in summer)

These verb stems above formed from the adjectival stems. These are called derived verbs. The suffix –fala has been attached to the adjectival stems.

(b) A → N – bontle (beauty)

bo – ntle

[< - ntle 'beautiful']

[Bontle] ba lelomo

(Beautiful flower)

A → N – bontsho

bo –ntsho

[< -ntsho 'black']

[Bontsho] ba monna  
(Man's blackness)

[Bosweu] ba lesela  
(The whiteness of a cloth)

(c) A → ADV (gagolo)  
ga –golo (too much)

Go bua gagolo  
(To speak too much)

Go bua gantle  
(To speak beautifully)

Go bua gannye  
(To speak very little)

## 2.7 COMPOUND ADJECTIVES

Compound adjectives are used to indicate the subsidiary colour in pattern. These compounds consists of adjective and adjective e.g. the stems –fifadu (black) and -hibidu (red) occur commonly in compounds:

Kgomo [e khibidu –fifadu]  
(Red and black cow)  
[< -hibidu + fifadu]  
(Red + black)

Kgomo [e tshumo –fifadu]  
(A white-backed black ox)  
[< -tshumo + fifadu]  
(White backed + black)



This type of adjective is very limited in Setswana.

## 2.8 SYNTACTIC DISTRIBUTION OF AP

### 2.8.1 Within an N P

There are various positions which the adjective can occupy in a clause:

As Normal position : AP is complement of head N:

[Pitsa [ê ntle]

(beautiful pot)

for emphasis : AP is the specifier of head N:

[ê ntle [pitsa]

(beautiful pot)

With an empty pro : [pro [ê ntle]

(beautiful one)

### 2.8.2 Subject of a clause

Adjectives may appear as:

Complement : [pitsa e ntle] Ke ya me

(This beautiful pot is mine)

Specifier : [ê ntle pitsa] Ke ya me

(The beautiful pot is mine)

Empty pro : [E ntle] Ke ya me

(The beautiful one is mine)

### 2.8.2 As an object of a clause:

Complement : Ke batla [pitsa e ntle]

(I want beautiful pot)

Empty pro : Ke batla [e ntle]

(I want beautiful one)

### 2.8.3 Complement of a verb

Adjectives or adjectival phrases may be used as complement of Copulative verbs.

(a) The abstract copulative verb:

Dintšwa [di-cop [dikgolo] →

Dintšwa [di dikgolo]

(Dogs are big)

Here, the determiner may agree with the head noun or the subject dintšwa and the copulative base as regards class and number e.g. Class 10 – di.

(b) The verb le:

The distribution of this verb is very restricted in Setswana. This copulative verb may be used in two ways, it may appear in a situative mood in the subordinate or embedded sentences such as:

1. Dintšwa di bonagala [di [le dikgolo]

(Dogs appeared to be big)

2. Diaparo tse di ne [di le [ditala]

(These clothes were green/blue)

3. Fa mosadi [a le moleele]

(If the woman is tall)

(c) Verb se:

The verb le can be replaced by verb se in a negative form e.g.:

Fa mosadi [a se moleele]

(If the woman is not tall)

Diaparo tse di ne [di se ditala]  
(These clothes were not green/blue)

(d) Verb –nna:

1. Go [nna moleele]  
(to become tall or to be tall)
  
2. Ke [nna mogolo]  
(I am becoming old)

The example in (1) above, shows that the verb –nna may be used with the infinitive clause. In (2) above the idea of becoming is conveyed by the use of the verb -nna. This verb -nna is the most common and the most typical one in Setswana.

#### 2.8.4 COMPLEMENT OF A PREPOSITION

The preposition Ka:

The prepositon Ka can combine with any noun phrase in a structure e.g.

[Ka [monna yo mosweu]  
(With white man)

[Ka [yo mosweu]  
(With white one)

An adjective can, without any restrictions be used as a complement of the prepositions le and ke:

Associative le:

Mosadi o ja [le ngwana yo monnye]  
(The woman eats with the little child)

Mosadi o ja [le [yo monnye ngwana]  
(The woman eats with little child)

Mosadi o ja [le [yo monnye]

(The woman eats with little one)

Monna o tsamaya [le monna yo mokhutshwane]

(The man walks with the short man)

Monna o tsamaya [le [yo mokhutshwane monna]

(The man walks with the short man)

Monna o tsamya [le [yo mokhutshwane]

(The man walks with short one)

The preposition ke : with passive verbs

Batho ba beditswe [ke [monna yo mogolo]

(People were beaten by the big man)

Batho ba beditswe [ke [yo mogolo monna]

(People were beaten by the big man)

Batho ba beditswe [ke [yo mogolo]

(People were beaten by big one)

Here, the adjectives have been used as the complement of the preposition ke.

### 2.8.5 **Comparitive clause/phrases**

With comparison Setswana has no equivalent form of inflexion, but uses other expressions. The method of indicating comparison in Tswana is by the use of phrases based on the infinitives, prepositional phrases and copulatives.

(a) PP with jaaka:

Ngwana yo o ja [jaaka motho yo mogolo]

(The child eats like big person)

Ngwana yo o ja [jaaka yo mogolo]

The preposition jaaka has been used to compare the eating of the child with an old person.

(b) Infinitive clause:

The comparison here is by the use of phrases based on the infinitive go feta (to pass, to surpass) and go gaisa (to exceed or excel). These phrases are functionally descriptive.

Monna [yo moleele [go feta rre]  
(The man is taller than my father)

Mosadi [yo montsho [go gaisa monna]  
(The woman is more black than man)

Ngwana [o montle [go gaisa mosadi]  
(The child is more beautiful than woman)

(c) Copulative na in go na le:

The Copulative na in go na le (rather than) has been used in phrases to show the comparison between the subject and the complement.

Monna [o moleele [go na le mosadi]  
(The man is taller than woman)

Motse [o montle [go na le sekgwa]  
(The village is beautiful rather than the forest)

## 2.9 CONCLUSION

In this chapter one can realize that in Setswana adjectives have been morphologically analysed. This indicates that adjectives qualify the nouns. Setswana has a very limited number of the adjectival stems. Some stems have been grouped together in terms of their meanings.

It is important to note that the basic demonstratives do not only constitute the complement in the NP structure but they are as well as the determiners in the AP structure. The adjectives are divided into main parts i.e. adjectival prefixes and the adjectival stems. Agreement morphemes play an important role between noun class prefix which form part of nouns and adjectival prefixes which are part of adjectives.

Adjectives also appear as complements of nouns in different semantic categories. Reduplication of words and Transposition of words have been analysed. One will realize that to establish the selection restriction of the head noun of an NP with an AP, will be necessary to follow the semantic classification of adjectives. Adjectives can occupy various positions in various clauses e.g. within an AP, as a complement of a verb, as a complement of a preposition and as a comparative clause in the Syntactic distribution of the AP.

## CHAPTER 3

### THE RELATIVE CLAUSE

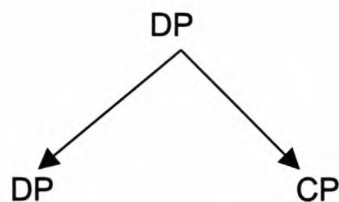
#### 1. THE AIM

The aim of this chapter is to examine whether relative clauses in Setswana have an adjective function. Verbal relatives have been classified with certain semantic categories, which are also applicable to nominal relatives such as qualification, value, human characteristics and physical property.

It will be necessary to see whether the relative clause consisting of a determiner phrase (DP) followed by a complementizer phrase (CP) in a structure is acceptable in Setswana.

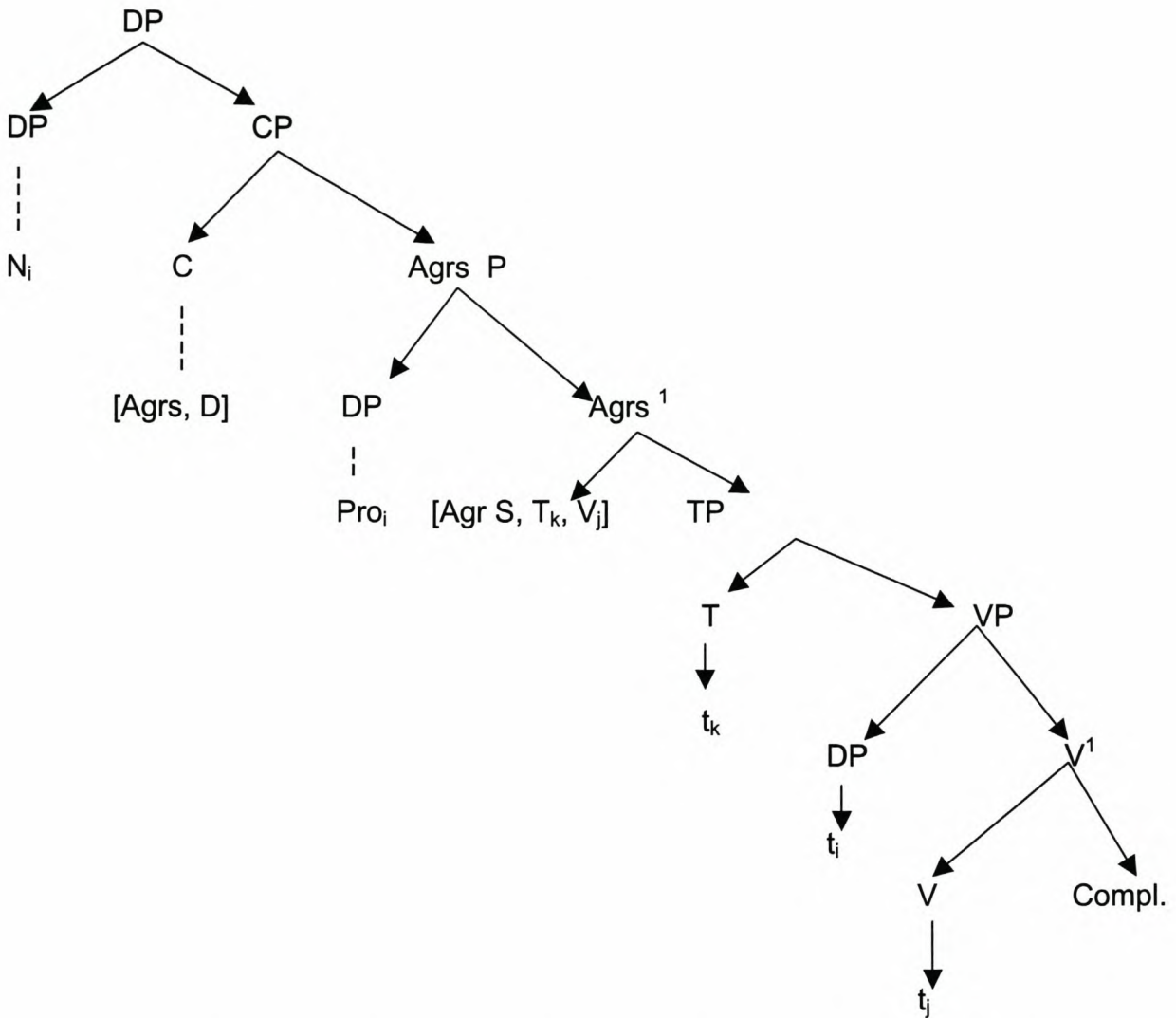
#### 2. THE STRUCTURE OF THE RELATIVE CLAUSE

The relative clause in Setswana consists of a determiner phrase (DP) followed by a complementizer (CP) in a structure such as follows:



In the structure on the following page, a detailed diagram will not be given of such a structure but the most pertinent elements in such a structure will be highlighted.

The determiner phrase (DP) has not been given a detailed structure. The relative clause is presented by the CP above. In this relative clause the DP will always be an empty pro which is coindexed with its antecedent DP which is represented by a head N above. Such relatives are also known as direct relatives in traditional grammar books, i.e. the antecedent of the relative clause is always also the subject of the relative clause.



The complementizer (C) above has the same form as the first position of the demonstrative although it does not have the meaning of a demonstrative. This form has AgrS and a determiner root [A] i.e. [AgrS, D] e.g. Class 7 [se + A → sê].

The verb in the relative clause may be either a copulative or non-copulative verb with descriptive relatives, the non-copulative verbs will usually appear without an object and such verbs may appear in various tenses. If the verb is a copulative verb (see below) the complement of such a verb may be represented by various categories such as NP, AP, NPREL, PP (see below). The tense of these copulative verbs is usually restricted to a present tense with the exception of the copulative verb na.



### 3. THE NON-COPULATIVE VERB IN THE RELATIVE CLAUSE

As indicated above, such verbs may appear in any tense of the verb such as present, future and perfect tenses. All such verbs have to occur with a relative marker [ng], which appears as a suffix on the verb, or on the deficient verb. Examples of such verbal relatives are given below. These relatives have been classified with certain semantic categories which are also applicable to nominal relatives (see below); the following semantic categories are presented as examples and thus is not an exhaustive list of such verbal relatives but it serves only as an example of how extensive verbs may be utilised within relative clauses with a certain descriptive function:

#### 3.1 Qualification

Correct [nepa]: Ke monna yo o nepang.  
(It is a correct man)

False [fosagala]: Ke karabo e e fosagalang  
(It is a false answer)

#### 3.2 Value

Beautiful [ntlafala]: Ke dithunya tse dintlafalang  
(It is beautiful flowers)

Desirous, eager [fisegang]: Ke monna yo o fisegang  
(It is a desirous man)

Well-dressed [Kgaba]: Ke mosadi yo o kgabang  
(It is a well-dressed woman)

Attractive [kgatlang]: Ke mosetsana yo o kगतlang  
(It is an attractive girl)

Thrifty [somarela]: Ke mosadi yo o somarelang  
(It is a thrifty woman)

### 3.3 HUMAN CHARACTERISTICS

#### 3.3.1 Good Characteristics

Astonished, surprised (gakgametse): Ke ngwana yo o gakgametseng  
(It is an astonished child)

Happy (itumela, thaba): Ke motho yo o itumelang  
(It is a happy person)

Lively (lebaleba): Ke ngwana yo o lebalebang  
(It is a lively child)

Diligent [tloafala]: Ke monna yo o tloafalang  
(It is a diligent man)

Serious (tlhonama): Ke mosadi yo o tlhonameng  
(It is a serious woman)

Patient (bobola): Ke mosadi yo o bobolang  
(It is a patient woman)

Free (gololosega): Ke ngwana yo o gololosegang  
(It is a free child)

Reliable (ikanyega): Ke monna yo o ikanyegang  
(It is a reliable man)

Proud (ipela): Ke mosadi yo o ipetseng  
(It is proud woman)

Respectful (tlhompega): Ke mosadi yo o tlhompegang  
(It is a respectful woman)

Honoured (tlotlega): Ke monna yo o tlotlegang  
(It is honoured man)

Trustworthy (tshepega): Ke monna yo o tshepegang  
(It is trustworthy man)

### 3.3.2 Bad characteristics

Adulterous (akafala): Ke basadi ba ba akafalang  
(It is adulterous women)

Despondent (babalelwa): Ke batho ba ba babalelwang  
(It is despondent people)

Impertinent (dipafala): Ke basimane ba ba dipafalang  
(It is impertinent boys)

Furious (gakala): Ke mosadi yo o gaketseng  
(It is a furious woman)

Angry (galefa, ngala): Ke monna yo o galefang  
(It is an angry man)

Bad-tempered (gotela): Ke monna yo o gotetseng  
(It is bad-tempered man)

Sad (hutsafala): Ke mosadi yo o hutsafetseng  
(It is a sad woman)

Haughty (ikgodisa): Ke mosetsana yo o ikgodisang  
(It is a haughty girl)

Disappointed (swaba): Ke mosadi yo o swabileng  
(It is a disappointed woman)

Idle (tlaraletse): Ke ngwana yo o tlaraletseng  
(It is an idle child)

Presumptuous (belafala): Ke mosadi yo o belafalang  
(It is a presumptuous woman)

Discourteous (bifela): Ke ngwana yo o bifelang  
(It is discourteous child)

Antagonistic (ganetsa): Ke monna yo o ganetsang  
(It is an antagonistic man)

Despicable (nyefola): Ke monna yo o nyefolang  
(It is a despicable man)

Disgusting (tena): Ke monna yo o tenang  
(It is a disgusting man)

**3.3.3 Timid characteristics**

Dizzy (dimokana):	Ke ngwana yo o dimokaneng (It is a dizzy child)
Inactive (kgobaletse):	Ke monna yo o kgobaletseng (It is an inactive man)
Calm (teba):	Ke motho yo o tebang (It is a calm person)
Silent (upaletse):	Ke mosetsana yo o upaletseng (It is a silent girl)
Doubtful (belaela):	Ke monna yo o belaelang (It is a doubting man)
Listless (korobela):	Ke ngwana yo o korobelang (It is listless child)
Silent (upaletse):	Ke mosetsana yo o upaletseng (It is a silent girl)
Doubtful (belaela):	Ke monna yo o belaelang (It is a doubting man)
Listless (korobela):	Ke ngwana yo o korobelang (It is listless child)
Frail (repatlana):	Ke mosadi yo o repetlanang (It is a frail woman)
Distressed (tlalelwa):	Ke mosadi yo o tlalelwang (It is distressed woman)

**3.3.4 Retarded**

Mad (tsenwa):	Ke mosadi yo o tsenwang (It is a mad woman)
---------------	--

**3.3.5 Skills**

Experienced (sugega):	Ke monna yo o sugegileng (It is an experienced man)
Skilled (rupelelwa):	Ke monna yo o rupelelwang (It is a skilled man)

### 3.3.6 Wealth

Poor (humanega; dila):	Ke batho ba ba humanegileng (It is poor people)
Rich (huma):	Ke monna yo o humang (It is a rich man)

## 3.4 PHYSICAL PROPERTY

### 3.4.1 Qualities of the body

#### 3.4.1.1 Good qualities

Healthy (itekanela):	Ke motho yo o itekanelang (It is a healthy person)
Fit (nonofa):	Ke ngwana yo o nonofang (It is a fit child)
Alive (phedile):	Ke monna yo o phedileng (It is a man who is alive)

#### 3.4.1.2 Bad qualities

Hungry (gwaile, gabagabega):	Ke bana ba ba gabagabegang (It is hungry children)
Faint (idibala):	Ke ngwana yo o idibetseng (It is a child who fainted)
Tired (lapile):	Ke monna yo o lapileng (It is a tired man)
Fat (nona):	Ke batho ba ba nonneng (It is fat people)
Thirsty (nyorilwe):	Ke motho yo o nyorilweng (It is a thirsty person)
Pale (setlhafala):	Ke sefatlhego se se setlhafetseng (It is a pale face)
Wringled (sosobane):	Ke sefatlhego se se sosobaneng (It is a wringled face)
Dead (sule):	Ke motho yo o suleng (It is a deceased person)

Feverish (tšhatšhama):	Ke mmele o o tšhatšhamang (It is a feverish body)
Nervous; convulsive (fafamoga):	Ke ngwana yo o fafamogang (It is a nervous child)
Stooped (iname):	Ke mosadi yo o inameng (It is a stooped woman)
Shriveled (kokoropana):	Ke letlalo le le kokonopanang (It is a shriveled skin)
Shrunken (tetesela):	Ke mosadi yo o teteselang (It is a shrunken woman)
Old (tsofala):	Ke mosadi yo o tsofetseng (It is an old woman)

### 3.4.3 Food

Cooked, ripe (budule):	Ke dijo tse di buduleng (It is cooked food)
Bitter (baba):	Ke letswai le le babang (It is bitter salt)
Rotten (bodile):	Ke nama e e bodileng (It is rotten meat)

## 4. THE COPULATIVE VERB IN THE RELATIVE CLAUSE

There are six copulative verbs in Setswana. Most of these verbs have to be distinguished from other verbs because of two reasons: they have complements such as adjectives which do not regularly appear with non-copulative verbs and they do not have the same rich morphology as other verbs either in inflection or derivation, the last of which they never have.

### 4.1 The Copulative verb L1

The first copulative verb introduces a stative copulative but this verb has no overt form in the surface structure of the copulative clause in Setswana. This copulative verb may be represented in an abstract form as COP or L1 with no overt form but with a meaning of

stative. It only appears in copulative clauses with present tense in the inflectional phrase. It occurs in relative clauses with the following complements:

Nominal-relative stems: All such stems appear with this copulative verb. These nominal relative stems will be treated in detail below. Such a relative clause will have the following structure:

1(a) [Mosadi] [yo [o bothhale]  
(An intelligent woman)

1(b) [DP] [CP [C [Agr S L1 [Bothhale]

2. Locatives Phrase: any locative phrase may be a complement of this verb: Locative with suffix [-eng]:

Mosadi [yo [o [Kwa nokeng]  
(The woman who is at the river)

3. Locative noun classes:

(a) Sekolo [se [se [gaufi]  
(The school which is near)

(b) Ntlo [e [e [kwa morago ga sekolo]  
(The house which is at the back of the school)

Locative demonstration and pronouns:

4(a) Bana [ba [ba [fa]  
(The children who are here)

4(b) Bana [ba [ba [gone]  
(The children who are present)

There are an older form of a locative pronoun, which is yo in non-relative causes, it appears as a complement of such a non-overt copulative verb as above.

## 5. Bana [ga –ba [yo]

(The children are not here)

However, in a relative clause this yo behaves as if it is now a copulative verb because it accepts the relative marker [-ng] which only appears as a suffix on verbs:

## 6(a) \*Bana [ba [ba – yo – ng]

(The children who are present)

## 6(b) Bana [ba [ba – se – yo – ng]

(The children who are not present)

Locatives with prepositional heads go and ka:

## 7(a) Bana [ba [ba [kwa [go mmaabo]

(Children who are with their mother)

## 7(b) Pitsa [e [e [ka [fa [tlase ga tafole]

(The pot which is underneath the table)

4.2 The copulative verb [le]

The copulative verb [le] appears in a relative clause when the complement of this verb is a noun phrase, which is in an equative or identificative relation with the noun phrase, which is the antecedent of the relative clause. The copulative verb [le] is forced to accept the relative marker [-ng] in the following cases:

## 8(a) Monna [yo [e–leng [motlhotlheletsi]

(The man who is a persuasive person)

## 8(b) Monna [yo [e–leng [motsietsi]

(The man who is a deceiver)

In these relative clauses above, a subjectival agreement morpheme [e] appears, which is not derived from the subject; i.e. monna. In such equative relations the copula ke always appears in the indicative mood. In such a case there is also no agreement between the subject and the copula:



9. Monna yo [ke [motsietsi]  
(This man is a deceiver)

There are many cases in which the noun phrase, which occurs as a complement of the copulative verb. le above, may also appear as a nominal relative clause with the non-overt copulative verb L1:

- 10(a) Monna [yo [e–leng [legodu]  
(The man who is a glutton)
- 10(b) Monna [yo [o [legodu]  
(A gluttonous man)
- 11(a) Monna [yo [e–leng [lesilo]  
(The man who is a stupid person)
- 11(b) Monna [yo [o lesilo]  
(A stupid man)
- 12(a) Mosetsana [yo [e–leng [motlapa]  
(The girl who is a lazy person)
- 12(b) Mosetsana [yo [o [motlapa]  
(A lazy girl)
- 13(a) Monna [yo [e–leng [senatla]  
(The man who is a brave man)
- 13(b) Monna [yo [o [senatla]  
(A brave man)
- 14(a) Monna [yo [e–leng [setlaela]  
(The man who is a fool)
- 14(b) Monna [yo [o [setlaela]  
(A foolish man)

The copulative verb [le] appears in the participial mood within a relative clause. In such cases the clause with the participial mood has to appear as a complement clause of a

deficient verb such as [ne] which licences a participial clause and this deficient verb will accept the relative marker [-ng]:

With an adjectival phrase:

15. Mosadi [yo [o–neng [a – le [montle]  
(The woman who was beautiful)

With a nominal relative phrase:

16. Monna [yo [o–neng [a – le [botlhale]  
(The man who was intelligent)

With a locative phrase:

17. Mosadi [yo [o–neng [a – le [Kwa nokeng]  
(The woman who was at the river)

With a noun phrase:

18. Mosadi [yo [e–neng [e – le [legodu]  
(The woman who was a gluttonous)

4.3 The copulative verb [se]

The copulative verb [se] is a verb with a negative meaning and it accepts the relative marker [-ng] in a relative clause. This copulative verb has the following distribution:

Firstly, it appears in all cases where the non-overt copulative verb LI occurs, i.e. the verb in par. 4.1 above: With a nominal relative phrase:

- 19(a) Mosadi [yo [o [botlhale]  
(The woman who is intelligent)

- 19(b) Mosadi [yo [o–seng [botlhale]  
(The woman who is not intelligent)

With a locative phrase:

- 20(a) Ngwana [yo [o [mo sekolong]  
(The child who is in the school)
- 20(b) Ngwana [yo [o–seng [mo sekolong]  
(The child who is not in the school)

Secondly, it has to appear in the negative of an adjectival phrase. Such phrases do not appear in relative clauses except when they are *in* forced to occur in the negative:

- 22(a) Mosadi [yo [mokhutshwane]  
(A short woman)
- 22(b) Mosadi [yo [o–seng [mokhutshwane]  
(A woman who is not short)

Thirdly, it always replaces the copulative verb [le] in par. 4.2 above:

- 22(a) Monna [yo [e–leng [lesilo]  
(The man who is a stupid person)
- 22(b) Monna [yo [e–seng] [lesilo]  
(A man who is not a stupid person)
- 23(a) Mosadi [yo [o–neng [a – le [kwa nokeng]  
(The woman who was at the river)
- 23(b) Mosadi [yo [o–neng [a – se [Kwa nokeng]  
(The woman who was not at the river)

### 4.3 THE COPULATIVE VERB [na]

The copulative verb [na] only appears in the associative copulative construction with a reference to association or possession. It has a complement which is a prepositional phrase with [le] as head. The copulative verb [na] always accepts the relative marker [-ng] in a relative clause:

24. Ngwana [yo [o–nang [le [buka]  
(The child who has a book)

In many cases such relative clauses as above in (24) may be replaced by a nominal relative clause if the complement of the preposition [le] above is descriptive in function. In the examples below, the first phrase will have the relative clause with the copulative verb [na] while the second one will have a nominal relative clause:

- 25(a) Motho [yo [o–nang [le [kelotlhoko]  
(An attentive person)

- 25(b) Motho [yo [o [kelotlhoko]  
(An attentive person)

- 26(a) Motho [yo [o–nang [le [mosola]  
(A useful person)

- 26(b) Motho [yo [o [mosola]  
(A useful person)

- 27(a) Monna [yo [o–nang [le [kgala]  
(A shameful person)

- 27(b) Monna [yo [o [kgala]  
(A shameful person)

- 28(a) Monna [yo [o–nang [le [kgotlelelo]  
(A courageous man)

- 28(b) Monna [yo [o [kgotlelelo]  
(A courageous man)

- 29(a) Monna [yo [o–nang [le [mafofonyane]  
(A hysterical man)

- 29(b) Monna [yo [o [mafofonyane]  
(A hysterical man)

30(a) Monna [yo [o-nang [le [maitemogelo]  
(An experienced man)

30(b) Monna [yo [o [maitemogelo]  
(An experienced man)

31(a) Motho [yo [o-nang [le [matsetseleko]  
(A diligent person)

31(b) Motho [yo [o [matsetseleko]  
(A diligent person)

32(a) Monna [yo [o-nang [le [tsholofelo]  
(A hopeful man)

32(b) Monna [yo [o [tsholofelo]  
(A hopeful man)

31(a) Motho [yo [o-nang [le [matsetseleko]  
(A diligent person)

31(b) Motho [yo [o [matsetseleko]  
(A diligent person)

32(a) Monna [yo [o-nang [le [tsholofelo]  
(A hopeful man)

32(b) Monna [yo [o [tsholofelo]  
(A hopeful man)

33(a) Mosadi [yo [o-nang [le [maikarabelo]  
(A responsible woman)

33(b) Mosadi [yo [o [maikarabelo]  
(A responsible woman)

34(a) Mosetsana [yo [o-nang [le [kgogedi]  
(An adorable girl)

34(b) Mosetsana [yo [o [kgogedi]  
(An adorable girl)

35(a) Mosimane [yo [o-nang [le [maitseo]

(A boy who is behaved)

35(b) Mosimane [yo [o [maitseo]

(A boy who is behaved)

36(a) Ngwana [yo [o-nang [le [maibi]

(A delirious child)

36(b) Ngwana [yo [o[maibi]

(A delirious child)

37(a) Ntlo [e [e-nang [le [khuti]

(A hollow house)

37(b) Ntlo [e [e [khuti]

(A hollow house)

#### 4.4 THE COPULATIVE VERB [nna]

The copulative verb [nna] may appear with all the inflectional categories just like any non-copulative verb but it has no lexical derivational morphology. It may occur with any of the complements of copulative verbs, which have been identified in par. 4.1 – 4.4

38(a) Monna [yo [o-nnileng [kgosi]

(The man who became a chief)

38(b) Mosadi [yo [o-tla-nnang [kwa nokeng]

(The woman who will be at the river)

#### 4.6 THE COPULA (Ke)

The copula [ke] never appears in a relative clause.

### 5. THE NOMINAL-RELATIVE STEM

The nominal-relative stem appears as complement of a copulative verb, as indicated above:

[Dijo [di-tla[nna[monate]

(The food will be nice)

In this sentence, the nominal-relative stem is monate, which appears as complement of the copulative verb nna.

The majority of such stems have two functions: nominal functions such as subjects or objects of clauses, and a descriptive function as above e.g. letlhaswa (careless person).

Such a noun may function as subject or object of a clause:

Subject: [Letlhaswa le] le-ya kae?

(Where is this careless person going to?)

Object: Ga-re-itse [letlhaswa le]

(We don't know this careless person)

The same noun may also appear with a descriptive function:

Ke mosadi [yo [o [letlhaswa]

(It is a careless woman)

However, there are nominal-relative stems which no longer appear with the function of subject or object as above, but they now have only a descriptive function, such as tsididi (cold):

Ke metsi [a [a tsididi]

(It is cold water)

A second major distinction with regard to nominal-relative stems has to be made because certain stems appear only as nominal-relative stems or as either a nominal-relative stem or a complement of a possessive [a] in a descriptive possessive. In such cases the nominal-relative stem usually has the nominal functions such as subject or object of a clause as above e.g. letswai (salt):

As a nominal: [letswai] le kae?

(Where is the salt?)

As a nominal-relative:                   Ke dijo [tse [di letswai]  
(It is salty food)

As a descriptive possessive:       Ke dijo [tsa [letswai]  
(It is salty food)

The nominal-relative stems will be divided into two sections below: in the first section, no descriptive possessive may appear, while in the second section, the nominal-relative stem may also appear as complement of the possessive [a] in a descriptive possessive.

## **SECTION A : THE NOMINAL-RELATIVE STEM DOES NOT APPEAR WITH A POSSESSIVE [A]**

### 1. Nominal-relative stems which do not have any nominal functions.

There are nominal-relative stems, which only appear as complements of copulative verbs with a descriptive function and which have no nominal function such as subjects or objects of clauses. Examples of such nominal-relative stems will be given below as well as the specific selection restrictions, which the arguments of the antecedent of such relative clauses must show:

#### 1.1 [polokwe] (muscular)

Selection restriction on the antecedent:

- (a) Human:       Ke [motho] yo o polokwe  
(It is a muscular person)
- (b) Body:         Ke [mmele] o o polokwe  
(It is a muscular body)

#### 1.2 [tsididi] (cold)

Selection restriction on the antecedent:

- (a) Liquid:       Ke [metsi] a a tsididi  
(It is a cold water)
- (b) Food:         Ke [dijo] tse di tsididi  
(It is cold food)
- (c) Weather:     Ke [phefo] e e tsididi  
(It is a cold wind)



## 1.3 [pila] (beautiful; good)

Selection restriction on the antecedent:

- (a) Human: Ke [mosadi] yo o pila  
(It is a beautiful woman)
- (b) Natural phenomena: Ke [thaba] e e pila  
(It is a beautiful mountain)  
Ke [ngwedi] o o pila  
(It is a beautiful moon)
- (c) Natural object: Ke [teemane] e e pila  
(It is a beautiful diamond)  
Ke [letlapa] le le pila  
(It is a beautiful stone)
- (d) Artifact: Ke [ntlo] e e pila  
(It is a beautiful house)  
Ke [sejanaga] se se pila  
(It is a beautiful car)
- (e) Body part: Ke [molomo] o o pila  
(It is a beautiful mouth)  
Ke [matlho] a a pila  
(They are beautiful eyes)
- (f) Plant: Ke [setlhare] se se pila  
(It is a beautiful tree)  
Ke [tlhaga] e e pila  
(It is a beautiful grass)
- (g) Animal: Ke [pitse] e e pila  
(It is a beautiful horse)  
Ke [ntšwa] e e pila  
(It is a beautiful dog)

## 1.4 [Kompa] (whole)

Selection restriction on the antecedent:

- (a) Natural object: Ke [letlapa] le le kompa  
(It is a whole stone)
- (b) Artifact: Ke [komiki] e e kompa  
(It is a whole cup)
- (c) Egg: Ke [lee] le le kompa  
(It is a whole egg)
- (d) Fruit: Ke [leungo] le le kompa  
(It is a whole fruit)
- (e) Natural phenomena: Ke [ngwedi] o o kompa  
(It is a whole moon)

2. Nominal-relative stems which also have nominal functions

The greatest number of nominal-relative stems regularly appear with nominal functions such as subject or object of a clause, but such nominals are frequently coerced into a descriptive function if the meaning of the specific noun is such that it may be possible to be coerced into another function e.g. the meaning of setilo (chair) as an artifact does not have a clear indication that it may also be used with a descriptive function. But nouns which have i.e. a meaning which refers to a state, may frequently also be coerced into a descriptive function e.g. bonyemeku (suppleness):

- As a nominal: Re-lebeletse [bonyemeku ba letlalo]  
(We looked at the suppleness of the skin)
- As a nominal-relative: Ke [letlalo [le [le bonyemeku]  
(It is a suppleness skin)

Such nominals as above, which acquire a descriptive function when appearing as complement of a copulative verb, may be classified into four subcategories. In the first subcategory the nominal appears unchanged as a descriptive nominal-stem. In

the second subcategory the nominal which is now a relative stem has to show number agreement with its antecedent. The third subcategory is the same as the first one above, but the nominal may also occur as a derived nominal in class 14. The fourth subcategory will then be a combination of the second and third categories above.

## 2.1 The nominal is also a nominal-relative stem

In this subcategory the nominal may be coerced into a relative stem without the nominal undergoing any change at all in its form. The only change will be in its meaning where the nominal will now acquire a new descriptive meaning which is related in meaning to that of one of the senses of the noun e.g. monate:

As nominal: [Monate wa dijo] o batlilwe  
(Deliciousness of the food is wanted)

As nominal-relative stem: Ke [dijo [tse [di monate]  
(It is delicious food)

The various nouns below will show its coercion to a descriptive function as well as the selection restriction, which this new sense of the nominal relative stem will force on the antecedent, which may appear with these stems:

### 2.1.1 [bonyemeku] suppleness > supple

Selection restriction on the antecedent:

- (a) Human: Ke [mosetsana] yo o bonyemeku  
(It is a supple girl)
- (b) Body part: Ke [letlalo] le le bonyemeku  
(It is a supple skin)
- (c) Artifact: Leather: Ke [kgole] e e bonyemeku  
(It is a supple role)
- (d) Artifact: Clothes: Ke [lebanta] le le bonyemeku  
(It is a supple belt)
- (e) Plant: Ke [kala] e e bonyemeku  
(It is a supple branch)

## 2.1.2 [bofefo] (light-footedness &gt; lightfooted)

Selection restriction on the antecedent:

- (a) Human: Ke [monna] yo o bofefo  
(It is a light-footed man)
- (b) Animal: Ke [phologolo] e e bofefo  
(It is a light-footed animal)

## 2.1.3 [malolololo] {emaciatedness &gt; emaciated}

Selection restriction on the antecedent:

- Animal only: Ke [nku] e e malolololo  
(It is an emaciated sheep)

## 2.1.4 [matlabua] (flabby):

Selection restriction on the antecedent:

- Human only: Ke [mosadi] yo o matlabua  
(It is a flabby woman)

## 2.1.5 [bothitho] (warm)

Selection restriction on the antecedent:

- (a) Liquid: Ke [metsi] a a bothitho  
(It is a warm water)
- (b) Household: Instrument: Ke [pitsa] e e bothitho  
(It is a warm pot)
- (c) Clothes: Ke [mosese] o o bothitho  
(It is a warm dress)
- (d) Food: Ke [dijo] tse di bothitho  
(They are warm food)

## 2.1.6 [motlha] (lukewarm)

Selection restriction on the antecedent:

- (a) Liquid: Ke [metsi] a a motlha  
(It is a lukewarm water)

- (b) Food: Ke [bogobe] bo bo motlha  
(It is a lukewarm porridge)
- (c) Clothes: Le [gempe] e e motlha  
(It is a lukewarm shirt)

### 2.1.7 [monate] (sweetness, pleasantness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent:

- (a) Food: Ke [dinawa] tse di monate  
(They are sweet beans)
- (b) Fruit: Ke [leungo] le le monate  
(It is a sweet fruit)
- (c) Meat: Ke [nama] e e monate  
(It is a pleasant meat)
- (d) Liquid: Ke [bojalwa] bo bo monate  
(It is a sweet beer)
- (e) Communication: Ke [puo] e e monate  
(It is a pleasant speech)

### 2.1.8 [Matlhabathakane] (quick-witted person)

Selection restriction on the antecedent:

- Human only: Ke [monna] yo o matlhabathakane  
(It is a quick-witted man)

### 2.1.9 [Botoka] (betteness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent:

- (a) Human: Ke [ngwana] yo o botoka  
(It is a better child)
- (b) Communication: Ke [pegelo] e e botoka  
(It is a better report)
- (c) Food: Ke [bogobe] bo bo botoka  
(It is a better porridge)
- (d) Household instrument: Ke [sejana] se se botoka  
(It is a better plate)

- (e) Fruit: Ke [leungo] le le botoka  
(It is a better fruit)
- (f) Colour: Ke [mmala] o o botoka  
(It is a better colour)
- (g) Cognition: Ke [mathata] a a botoka  
(It is a better problem)
- (h) Communication: Ke [keletso] e e botoka  
(It is a better advice)

#### 2.1.10 [legero] (semi-circle)

Selection restriction on the antecedent:

- (a) Road: Ke [tsela] e e legero  
(It is a semi-circle road)
- (b) Natural phenomenon: Ke [mosima] o o legero  
(It is a semi-circle hole)

#### 2.1.11 [boteng] (depth)

Selection restriction on the antecedent:

- (a) Natural phenomenon: Ke [mosima] o o boteng  
(It is a deep hole)
- (b) Artifact: Ke [sediba] se se boteng  
(It is a deep well)

#### 2.1.12 [maphara] (shallow)

Selection restriction on the antecedent:

- (a) Household instrument: Ke [pitsa] e e maphara  
(It is a shallow pot)

### 2.2 Singular and plural nouns

The nominals below may also be coerced into accepting a descriptive sense as above in par. 2.1, but these nouns will then be sensitive to the number of the antecedent with which it appears. The noun which now appears as complement of a copulative clause, has to appear in the singular if its antecedent is in the singular:

Sekgakga [dirty person: Class 7 singular) with motho

(person: Class 1 singular) as antecedent:

Ke [motho [yo [o sekgakga]

(It is a dirty person)

But both nouns have to change to the plural if the antecedent appears in the plural:

Dikgakga (dirty persons: Class 8 plural) with batho

(persons: Class 2 plural) as antecedent:

Ke [batho [ba [ba dikgakga]

(They are dirty people)

With the exception of one noun, all examples as above which have a descriptive function when one of its arguments denotes a human being. It is then also forced to accept only human beings as antecedents. Such nouns are not obliged to be coerced into a descriptive function because they may appear as complements of copulative verbs such as [le] which do not force a descriptive function on the noun. In such cases the noun retains its nominal functions, as is evident in the following relative clause:

Ke motho [yo [e-leng [sekgakga]

(It is this person who is a dirty person)

In such cases, both nouns above have to appear in the singular or plural:

Ke [batho ba [ba [e-leng [dikgakga]

(It is these people who are dirty people)

The noun lephaka (vacuum) is the only one in this category, which does not refer to a human being because of its meaning. It thus has to refer to any physical object, which may sometimes be empty, as artifacts such as tanks or pots (see below):

Ke [pitsa [e [e-leng [lephaka]

(It is an empty pot)

Ke [tanka [e [e-leng [lephaka]

(It is a vacuum tank)

2.2.1 [Lesogo/masogo] (level-headed person > level-headed)

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [monna] yo o lesogo

(It is a level-headed man)

Plural: Ke [banna] ba ba masogo

(They are level-headed men)

2.2.2 [Mokola/bakola] (despicable person)

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [mosetsana] yo o mokola

(It is a despicable girl)

Plural: Ke [basetšana] ba ba bakola

(They are despicable girls)

2.2.3 [Leoma/maoma] (cunning or experienced person)

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [monna] yo o leoma

(It is a cunning experienced man)

Plural: Ke [banna] ba ba maoma

(They are cunning experienced men)

2.2.4 [Kobaswe/bôkobaswe] (good-for-nothing)

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [mosetsane] yo o kobaswe

(It is a good-for-nothing girl)

Plural: Ke [basetšana] ba ba bôkobaswe

(They are good-for-nothing girls)



### 2.2.5 [Mongalo/mengalo] (despondent)

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [mosetsana] yo o mongalo  
(It is a despondent girl)

Plural: Ke [basetšana] ba ba mengalo  
(They are despondent girls)

### 2.2.6 [Nkwatle/bônkwatle] (Careless person)

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [mosetsana] yo o nkwatle  
(It is a careless girl)

Plural: Ke [basetšana] ba ba bônkwatle  
(They are careless girls)

### 2.2.7 [Mosuga/basuga] (Demanding)

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [ngwana] yo o mosuga  
(It is a demanding child)

Plural: Ke [bana] ba ba basuga  
(They are demanding children)

### 2.2.8 [Segagapa/digagapa] (self-willed person)

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [mosadi] yo o segagapa  
(It is a self-willed woman)

Plural: Ke [basadi] ba ba digagapa  
(They are self-willed women)

### 2.2.8 [Sekgakga/dikgakga] (dirty person)

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [mosetsana] yo o sekgakga  
(It is a dirty girl)

Plural: Ke [basetšana] ba ba dikgakga  
(They are dirty girls)

### 2.2.9 [Sebeto/dibeto] (tearful person)

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [mosetsana] yo o sebeto  
(It is a tearful girl)

Plural: Ke [basetšana] ba ba dibeto  
(They are tearful girls)

### 2.2.11 [Setshomatshoma/ditshomatshoma] (clumsy and stupid person)

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [motho] yo o setshomatshoma  
(It is a clumsy person)

Plural: Ke [batho] ba ba ditshomatshoma  
(They are clumsy people)

### 2.2.12 [Setshururu/ditshururu] (clumsy)

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [mosadi] yo o setshururu  
(It is a clumsy woman)

Plural: Ke [basadi] ba ba ditshururu  
(They are clumsy women)

### 2.2.13 [Sekopa/dikopa] (dull and stupid)

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [monna] yo o sekopa  
(It is a dull and stupid man)

Plural: Ke [banna] ba ba dikopa  
(They are dull and stupid men)

### 2.2.14 [Seramatla/diramatla] (foolish)

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [monna] yo o seramatla  
(It is a foolish man)

Plural: Ke [banna] ba ba diramatla  
(They are foolish men)

### 2.2.15 [Setlatla/ditlatla] (foolish and stupid)

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [ngwana] yo o setlatla  
(It is a foolish and stupid child)

Plural: Ke [bana] ba ba ditlatla  
(They are foolish and stupid children)

### 2.2.16 [Seeleele/dieleele] (foolish and stupid)

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [motho] yo o seeleele  
(It is a foolish and stupid person)

Plural: Ke [batho] ba ba dieleele  
(They are foolish and stupid people)

## 2.2.17 [segamugamu/digamugamu] (naïve and foolish)

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [monna] yo o segamugamu  
(It is a naïve and foolish man)

Plural: Ke [banna] ba ba digamugamu  
(They are naïve and foolish men)

## 2.2.18 [Setlamutlamu/ditlamutlamu] (naïve and foolish)

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [monna] yo o setlamutlamu  
(It is a naïve and foolish man)

Plural: Ke [banna] ba ba ditlamutlamu  
(They are naïve and foolish men)

## 2.2.19 [Sethakga/dithakga] (skilful)

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [morutabana] yo o sethakga  
(It is a skilful teacher)

Plural: Ke [barutabana] ba ba dithakga  
(They are skilful teachers)

## 2.2.20 [Segwaba/digwaba] (very able person)

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [mosadi] yo o segwaba  
(It is a very able woman)

Plural: Ke [basadi] ba ba digwaba  
(They are very able women)

### 2.2.21 [Kgeleke/dikgeleke] (orator)

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [monna] yo o kgeleke  
(It is an orator)

Plural: Ke [banna] ba ba dikgeleke  
(They are orators)

### 2.2.22 [Setswerere/ditswerere] (artistic)

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [mosadi] yo o setswerere  
(It is an artistic woman)

Plural: Ke [basadi] ba ba ditswerere  
(They are artistic women)

### 2.2.23 [Phetakapejane/bôphetakapejane] (active and energetic)

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [mosetsana] yo o phetakapejane  
(It is an active and energetic girl)

Plural: Ke [basetšana] ba ba bôphetakapejane  
(They are active and energetic girls)

### 2.2.24 [Motsotsoropa/metsotsoropa] (tall and slender)

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [mosetsana] yo o motsotsoropa  
(It is a tall and slender girl)

Plural: Ke [basetšana] ba ba metsotsoropa  
(They are tall and slender girls)

**2.2.25 [Letlharapa/matlharapa] (tall and slender)**

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [mosetsana] yo o letlharapa  
(It is a tall and slender girl)

Plural: Ke [basetšana] ba ba matlharapa  
(They are tall and slender girls)

**2.2.26 [Serathane/dirathane] (lean with protruding abdomen)**

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [ngwana] yo o serathane  
(It is a lean with protruding abdomen child)

Plural: Ke [bana] ba ba dirathane  
(They are lean with protruding abdomen children)

**2.2.27 [Sebinita/dibinita] (stout)**

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [monna] yo o sebinita  
(It is a stout man)

Plural: Ke [banna] ba ba dibinita  
(They are stout men)

**2.2.28 [Motlepere/metlepere] (useless and flabby person)**

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [motho] yo o motlepere  
(It is a useless and flabby person)

Plural: Ke [batho] ba ba metlepere  
(They are useless and flabby people)

### 2.2.29 [Sekatana/dikatana] (short, not respected)

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [monna] yo o sekatana  
(It is a short and not respected man)

Plural: Ke [banna] ba ba dikatana  
(They are short and not respected men)

### 2.2.30 [Sekgakgarua/dikgakgarua] (decrepit)

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [monna] yo o sekgakgarua  
(It is a decrepit man)

Plural: Ke [banna] ba ba dikgakgarua  
(They are decrepit men)

### 2.2.31 Serepa/direpa] (comatose)

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [monna] yo o serepa  
(It is a comatose man)

Plural: Ke [banna] ba ba direpa  
(They are comatose men)

### 2.2.32 [Segwana/digwana] (deaf and dumb)

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [monna] yo o segwana  
(It is a deaf and dumb man)

Plural: Ke [banna] ba ba digwana  
(They are deaf and dumb men)

## 2.2.33 [Susu/bôsusu ] (deaf person)

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [monna] yo o susu  
(It is a deaf man)

Plural: Ke [banna] ba ba bôsusu  
(They are deaf men)

## 2.2.34 [Sekoka/dikoka] (disabled)

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

Singular: Ke [monna] yo o sekoka  
(It is a disabled man)

Plural: Ke [banna] ba ba dikoka  
(They are disabled men)

## 2.2.35 [Lephaka/maphaka] (empty)

Selection restriction on antecedent: Physical object

Conditions on appearance:

Artifact: [Kgetse] (bag)

Singular: Ke [kgetse] e e lephaka  
(It is an empty bag)

Plural: Ke [dikgetse] tse di maphaka  
(They are empty bags)

Artifact: [sejana] (dish)

Singular: Ke [sejana] se se lephaka  
(It is an empty dish)

Plural: Ke [dijana] tse di maphaka  
(They are empty dishes)



### 2.3 The noun may also appear in Class 14

As indicated above in par. 2.1 and 2.2, the noun may also be coerced in this subcategory to appear with a descriptive function. However, a few such nouns may appear as derived nouns in class 14 from these nouns. In class 14 such nouns have an additional sense of state and this meaning makes it easy for such derived nouns in class 14 to be coerced with a descriptive function.

These class 14 nouns may then also appear as complements of the possessive [a] with a descriptive meaning. Such a descriptive possessive and a nominal relative will both have this additional sense of a descriptive function:

#### 2.3.1 [Phepa] (pure, faultless, clean)

First selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Ke [mosetsana] yo o phepa

(It is a pure and faultless girl)

Conditions on appearance: In class 14 : bophepa.

Nominal relative: Ke mosefsana [wa bophepa]

(It is a pure and faultless girl)

Second selection restriction on the antecedent: Physical object

Ke [diaparo] tse di phepa

(They are clean clothes)

Conditions on appearance: In class 14: bophepa.

Nominal relative: Ke diaparo tse di [bophepa]

(They are clean clothes)

Possessive: Ke diaparo [tsa bophepa]

(They are clean clothes)

#### 2.3.2 [Malaomabe] (Vagabond)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Ke [monna] yo o malaomabe

(It is a Vagabond man)

Conditions on appearance: In class 14: bomalaomabe

Nominal relative: Ke monna yo o [bomalaomabe]

(It is a vagabond man)

Possessive: Ke monna [wa bomalaomabe]  
(It is a vagabond man)

### 2.3.3 [Sephara] (wide)

Selection restriction on antecedent: Physical Object

Ke [kgoro] e e sephara  
(It is a wide door)

Conditions on appearance: In class 14: bophara

Nominal relative: Ke Kgoro e e [bophara]  
(It is a wide door)

Possessive: Ke kgoro [ya bophara]  
(It is a wide door)

## 2.4 Singular and Plural nouns as well as derived Class 14 nouns

In the fourth subcategory, one finds nominals as above which now have a descriptive function. However, these nouns behave in a similar way to that in par. 2.2 above combined with par. 2.3, i.e. in par. 2.2: the descriptive nominal has to agree with its antecedent in number: both must be singular or Plural. In par. 2.3 a derived nominal in class 14 with an additional sense of state may also occur in this category. In such a case, the nominal may appear either as a complement of a copulative verb or as a complement of the possessive [a] with a descriptive function. In both cases the meaning of the two constructions will exactly be the same.

The reason for the obligatory presence of agreement in number is the same as the reason which has been advanced in par. 2.2 above, i.e. the nominal which now may have a descriptive function has a reference to a specific person or physical object. In the nominal relative construction there is then a specific relation between the antecedent and the complement of the copulative: in this case there is an identificative relation in which the antecedent and the complement are identified with each other. Such relations are thus equative or identificative and these nominals may then appear in two constructions e.g. letlhaswa (careless person).

Equative function: [mosadi [yo [e-leng [letlhaswa]  
(A woman who is a careless person)

Descriptive function: [Mosadi [yo [o letlhaswa]  
(A careless woman)

#### 2.4.1 [Senganga/dinganga] (Conservative person > conservative)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

(a) Singular/Plural:

Singular: Ke [mosadi] yo o senganga  
(It is a conservative woman)

Plural: Ke [basadi] ba ba dinganga  
(They are conservative women)

(b) Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke mosadi yo o [bonganga]  
(It is a conservative woman)

Possessive: Ke mosadi [wa bonganga]  
(It is a conservative woman)

#### 2.4.2 [mofula/bafula] (greedy, avaricious)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

(a) Singular/Plural:

Singular: Ke [monna] yo o mofula  
(It is an avaricious man)

Plural: Ke [banna] ba ba bafula  
(They are avaricious men)

(b) Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke monna yo o [bofula]  
(It is an avaricious man)

Possessive: Ke monna [wa bofula]  
It is an avaricious man)

#### 2.4.3 [Mosomaredi/basomaredi] (conservative/thrifty person > conservative/thrifty)

Selection restriction ~~on~~ on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

## (a) Singular/Plural:

Singular: Ke [monna] yo o mosomaredi  
(It is a conservative/thrifty man)

Plural: Ke [banna] ba ba basomaredi  
(They are conservative/thrifty men)

## (b) Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke monna yo o [bosomaredi]  
(It is a conservative/thrifty man)

Possessive: Ke monna [wa bosomaredi]  
(It is a conservative/thrifty man)

## 2.4.4 [Moikgantsi/baikgantshi] (Haughty person)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

## (a) Singular/Plural:

Singular: Ke [mosadi] yo o moikgantshi  
(It is a haughty woman)

Plural: Ke [basadi] ba ba baikgantshi  
(They are haughty women)

## (b) Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke mosadi yo o [boikgantshi]  
(It is a haughty woman)

Possessive: Ke mosadi [wa boikgantshi]  
(It is a haughty woman)

## 2.4.5 [Senatla/dinatla] (Industrious; virile, brave person &gt; industrious)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

## (a) Singular/Plural:

Singular: Ke [monna] yo o senatla  
(It is an industrious man)

Plural: Ke [banna] ba ba dinatla  
(They are industrious men)

- (b) Class 14:
- Nominal relative: Ke monna yo o [bonatla]  
(It is an industrious man)
- Possessive: Ke monna [wa bonatla]  
(It is an industrious man)

#### 2.4.6 [Leferefere/Maferefere] (cunning, deceitful person > Cunning)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

- (a) Singular/Plural:
- Singular: Ke [monna] yo o leferefere  
(It is a cunning man)
- Plural: Ke [banna] ba ba maferefere  
(They are cunning men)

- (b) Class 14:
- Nominal relative: Ke monna yo o [boferefere]  
(It is a cunning man)
- Possessive: Ke monna [wa boferefere]  
(It is a cunning man)

#### 2.4.7 [Letadimakwana/matadimakwana] (Cunning person > Cunning)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

- (a) Singular/Plural:
- Singular: Ke [motho] yo o letadimakwana  
(It is a cunning person)
- Plural: Ke [batho] ba ba matadimakwana  
(They are cunning people)

- (b) Class 14:
- Nominal relative: Ke motho yo o [botadimakwana]  
(It is a cunning person)
- Possessive: Ke motho [wa botadimakwana]  
(It is a cunning person)

## 2.4.8 [Letsipa/matsipa] (Cunning person)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

- (a) Singular: Ke [legodu] le le letsipa  
(It is a cunning thief)
- Plural: Ke [magodu] a a matsipa  
(They are cunning thieves)
- (c) Class 14:
- Nominal relative: Ke legodu le le [botsipa]  
(It is a cunning thief)
- Possessive: Ke legodu [la botsipa]  
(It is a cunning thief)

## 2.4.9 [Legodu/magodu] (Thief; glutton, stingy person)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

- (a) Singular/Plural:
- Singular: Ke [mosimane] yo o legodu  
(It is a thievish boy)
- Plural: Ke [basimane] ba ba magodu  
(They are thievish boys)
- (b) Class 14:
- Nominal relative: Ke mosimane yo o [bogodu]  
(It is a thievish boy)
- Possessive: Ke mosimane [wa bogodu]  
(It is a thievish boy)

## 2.4.10 [Lenweenwee/manweenwee] (Thief; deceitful person)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

- (a) Singular/Plural:
- Singular: Ke [ngwana] yo o lenweenwee  
(It is a deceitful child)

Plural: Ke [bana] ba ba manweenwee  
(They are deceitful children)

(b) Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke ngwana yo o [bonweenwee]  
(It is a deceitful child)

Possessive: Ke ngwana [wa bonweenwee]  
(It is a deceitful child)

#### 2.4.11 [Legwaragwara/magwaragwara] (Deceitful person)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

(a) Singular/Plural:

Singular: Ke [mosadi] yo o legwaragwara  
(It is a deceitful woman)

Plural: Ke [basadi] ba ba magwaragwara  
(They are deceitful women)

(b) Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke mosadi yo o [bogwaragwara]  
(It is a deceitful woman)

Possessive: Ke mosadi [wa bogwaragwara]  
(It is a deceitful woman)

#### 2.4.12 [Letlhaswa/matlhaswa] (Careless person > careless)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

(a) Singular/Plural:

Singular: Ke [mosadi] yo o letlhaswa  
(It is a careless woman)

Plural: Ke [basadi] ba ba matlhaswa  
(They are careless women)

## (b) Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke mosadi yo o [botlhaswa]  
(It is a careless woman)

Possessive: Ke mosadi [wa botlhaswa]  
(It is a careless woman)

## 2.4.13 [Sebodu/dibodu] (Lazy person, useless)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

## (a) Singular/Plural:

Singular: Ke [mosadi] yo o sebodu  
(It is a lazy woman)

Plural: Ke [basadi] ba ba dibodu  
(They are lazy women)

## (b) Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke mosadi yo o [bobodu]  
(It is a lazy woman)

Possessive: Ke mosadi [wa bobodu]  
(It is a lazy woman)

## 2.4.14 [Motlapa/Metlapa] (Lazy person)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

## (a) Singular/Plural:

Singular: Ke [mosetsana] yo o motlapa  
(It is a lazy girl)

Plural: Ke [basetšana] ba ba metlapa  
(They are lazy girls)

## (b) Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke mosetsana yo o [botlapa]  
(It is a lazy girl)



Possessive: Ke mosetsana [wa botlapa]  
(It is a lazy girl)

#### 2.4.15 [Moleofi/baleofi] (Vagabond, sinner)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

(a) Singular/Plural:

Singular: Ke [mosadi] yo o moleofi  
(It is a vagabond woman)

Plural: Ke [basadi] ba ba baleofi  
(They are vagabond women)

(b) Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke mosadi yo o [boleofi]  
(It is a vagabond woman)

Possessive: Ke mosadi [wa boleofi]  
(It is a vagabond woman)

#### 2.4.16 [Motlepere/metlepere] (Useless person/useless)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

(a) Singular/Plural:

Singular: Ke [mosadi] yo o motlepere  
(It is a useless woman)

Plural: Ke [basadi] ba ba metlepere  
(They are useless women)

(b) Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke mosadi yo o [botlepere]  
(It is a useless woman)

Possessive: Ke mosadi [wa botlepere]  
(It is a useless woman)

## 2.4.17 [Mmotlana/babotlana] (Wretched person &gt; wretched)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

## (a) Singular/Plural:

Singular: Ke [mosadi] yo o mmotlana  
(It is a wretched woman)

Plural: Ke [basadi] ba ba babotlana  
(They are wretched women)

## (b) Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke mosadi yo o [bobotlana]  
(It is a wretched woman)

Possessive: Ke mosadi [wa bobotlana]  
(It is a wretched woman)

## 2.4.18 [Motlhalefi/batlhalefi] (Bright and alert person)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

## (a) Singular/Plural:

Singular: Ke [monna] yo o motlhalefi  
(It is a bright and alert man)

Plural: Ke [banna] ba ba batlhalefi  
(They are bright and alert men)

## (b) Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke monna yo o [botlhalefi]  
(It is a bright and alert man)

Possessive: Ke monna [wa botlhalefi]  
(It is a bright and alert man)

## 2.4.19 [Lesilo/masilo] (stupid)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

(a) Singular/Plural:

Singular: Ke [ngwana] yo o lesilo  
(It is a stupid child)

Plural: Ke [bana] ba ba masilo  
(They are stupid children)

(b) Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke ngwana yo o [bosilo]  
(It is a stupid child)

Possessive: Ke ngwana [wa bosilo]  
(It is a stupid child)

#### 2.4.20 [Setlaela/ditlaela] (Stupid)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

(a) Singular/Plural:

Singular: Ke [mosetsana] yo o setlaela  
(It is a stupid girl)

Plural: Ke [basetšana] ba ba ditlaela  
(They are stupid girls)

(b) Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke mosetsana yo o [botlaela]  
(It is a stupid girl)

Possessive: Ke mosetsana [wa botlaela]  
(It is a stupid girl)

#### 2.4.21 [Sematla/dimatla] (foolish and stupid)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

(a) Singular/Plural:

Singular: Ke [mosimane] yo o sematla  
(It is a foolish and stupid boy)

Plural: Ke [basimane] ba ba dimatla  
(They are foolish and stupid boys)

(b) Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke mosimane yo o [bomatla]  
(It is a foolish and stupid boy)

Possessive: Ke mosimane [wa bomatla]  
(It is a foolish and stupid boy)

#### 2.4.22 [Semaumau/dimaumau] (Fool; half-wit . foolish and stupid)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

(a) Singular/Plural:

Singular: Ke [monna] yo o semaumau  
(It is a foolish and stupid man)

Plural: Ke [banna] ba ba dimaumau  
(They are foolish and stupid men)

(b) Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke monna yo o [bomaumau]  
(It is a foolish and stupid man)

Possessive: Ke monna [wa bomaumau]  
(It is a foolish and stupid man)

#### 2.4.23 [Seramuramu/diramuramu] (fool, half-wit > foolish and stupid)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

(a) Singular/Plural:

Singular: Ke [mosadi] yo o semarumaru  
(It is a foolish and stupid woman)

Plural: Ke [basadi] ba ba dimarumaru  
(They are foolish and stupid women)

## (b) Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke mosadi yo o [bomarumaru]  
(It is a foolish and stupid woman)

Possessive: Ke mosadi [wa bomarumaru]  
(It is a foolish and stupid woman)

## 2.4.24 {Mokatisi/bakatisi} (Skilful person)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

## (a) Singular/Plural:

Singular: Ke [monna] yo o mokatisi  
(It is a skilful man)

Plural: Ke [banna] ba ba bakatisi  
(They are skilful men)

## (b) Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke monna yo o [bokatisi]  
(It is a skilful man)

Possessive: Ke monna [wa bokatisi]  
(It is a skilful man)

## 2.4.25 [Sethakga/dithakga] (Dextrous person &gt; dextrous)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

## (a) Singular/Plural:

Singular: Ke [mosadi] yo o sethakga  
(It is a dextrous woman)

Plural: Ke [basadi] ba ba dithakga  
(They are dextrous women)

## (b) Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke mosadi yo o [bothakga]  
(It is a dextrous woman)

Possessive: Ke mosadi [wa bothakga]  
(They are dextrous woman)

#### 2.4.26 [Sekgorane/dikgorane] (Rich person)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

(a) Singular/Plural:

Singular: Ke [monna] yo o sekgorane  
(It is a rich man)

Plural: Ke [banna] ba ba dikgorane  
(They are rich men)

(b) Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke monna yo o [bokgorane]  
(It is a rich man)

Possessive: Ke monna [wa bokgorane]  
(It is a rich man)

#### 2.4.27 [Mohumi/bahumi] (Rich person)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

(a) Singular/Plural:

Singular: Ke [monna] yo o mohumi  
(It is a rich man)

Plural: Ke [banna] ba ba bahumi  
(They are rich men)

(b) Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke monna yo o [bohumi]  
(It is a rich man)

Possessive: Ke monna [wa bohumi]  
(It is a rich man)

## 2.4.28 [Moikgoni/baikgoni] (Rich person)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

(a) Singular/Plural:

Singular: Ke [monna] yo o moikgoni  
(It is a rich man)

Plural: Ke [banna] ba ba baikgoni  
(They are rich men)

(b) Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke monna yo o [boikgoni]  
(It is a rich man)

Possessive: Ke monna [wa boikgoni]  
(It is a rich man)

## 2.4.29 [Kgagapa/dikgagapa] (Stubborn and obstinate able person)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

(a) Singular/Plural:

Singular: Ke [ngwana] yo o kgagapa  
(It is a stubborn and obstinate/able child)

Plural: Ke [bana] ba ba dikgagapa  
(They are stubborn and obstinate/able children)

(b) Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke ngwana yo o [bokgagapa]  
(It is a stubborn and obstinate/able child)

Possessive: Ke ngwana [wa bokgagapa]  
(It is a stubborn and obstinate/able child)

## 2.4.30 [Setshwakga/ditshwakga] (Lazy person)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

## (a) Singular/Plural:

Singular: Ke [mosadi] yo o setshwakga  
(It is a lazy woman)

Plural: Ke [basadi] ba ba ditshwakga  
(They are lazy women)

## (c) Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke mosadi yo o [botshwakga]  
(It is a lazy woman)

Possessive: Ke mosadi [wa botshwakga]  
(It is a lazy woman)

## 2.4.31 [Sebetwane/dibetwane] (Quick-tempered person)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

## (a) Singular/Plural:

Singular: Ke [mosetsana] yo o sebetwane  
(It is a quick-tempered girl)

Plural: Ke [basetšana] ba ba dibetwane  
(They are quick-tempered girls)

## (b) Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke mosetsana yo o [bobetwane]  
(It is a quick-tempered girl)

Possessive: Ke mosetsana [wa bobetwane]  
(It is a quick-tempered girl)

## 2.4.32 [Senatla/dinatla] (Strong person)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

## (a) Singular/Plural:

Singular: Ke [monna] yo o senatla  
(It is a strong man)

Plural: Ke [banna] ba ba dinatla  
(They are strong men)



- (b) Class 14:
- Nominal relative: Ke monna yo o [bonatla]  
(It is a strong man)
- Possessive: Ke monna [wa bonatla]  
(It is a strong man)

#### 2.4.33 [Mokaloba/mekaloba] (tall and strong person)

Selection restriction on antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

- (a) Singular/Plural:
- Singular: Ke [monna] yo o mokaloba  
(It is a tall and strong man)
- Plural: Ke [banna] ba ba mekaloba  
(They are tall and strong men)

- (b) Class 14:
- Nominal relative: Ke monna yo o [bokaloba]  
(It is a tall and strong man)
- Possessive: Ke monna [wa bokaloba]  
(It is a tall and strong man)

#### 2.4.34 [Mokogo/mekogo] (Emaciated person)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

- (a) Singular/Plural:
- Singular: Ke [mosetsana] yo o mokogo  
(It is an emaciated girl)
- Plural: Ke [basetšana] ba ba mekogo  
(They are emaciated girls)

- (b) Class 14:
- Nominal relative: Ke mosetsana yo o [bokogo]  
(It is an emaciated girl)

Possessive: Ke mosetsana [wa bokogo]  
(It is an emaciated girl)

#### 2.4.35 [Lewalala/mawalala] (Emaciated person)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

(a) Singular/Plural:

Singular: Ke [monna] yo o lewalala  
(It is an emaciated man)

Plural: Ke [banna] ba ba mawalala  
(They are emaciated men)

(b) Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke monna yo o [bawalala]  
(It is an emaciated man)

Possessive: Ke monna [wa bawalala]  
(It is an emaciated man)

#### 2.4.36 [Leswafe/maswafe] (Albino)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

(a) Singular/Plural:

Singular: Ke [ngwana] yo o leswafe  
(It is an albino child)

Plural: Ke [bana] ba ba maswafe  
(They are albino children)

(b) Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke ngwana yo o [boswafe]  
(It is an albino child)

Possessive: Ke ngwana [wa boswafe]  
(It is an albino child)

## 2.4.37 [Sebetwane/dibetwane] (Short and corpulent person)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

## (a) Singular/Plural:

Singular: Ke [monna] yo o sebetwane  
(It is a short and corpulent man)

Plural: Ke [banna] ba ba dibetwane  
(They are short and corpulent men)

## (b) Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke monna yo o [bobetwane]  
(It is a short and corpulent man)

Possessive: Ke monna [wa bobetwane]  
(It is a short and corpulent man)

## 2.4.38 [Lemponempone/mamponempone] (Dwarf)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

## (a) Singular/Plural:

Singular: Ke [monna] yo o lemponempone  
(It is a dwarf man)

Plural: Ke [banna] ba ba mamponempone  
(They are dwarf men)

## (b) Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke monna yo o [bomponempone]  
(It is a dwarf man)

Possessive: Ke monna [wa bomponempone]  
(It is a dwarf man)

## 2.4.39 [Segole/digole] (Crippled)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

- (a) Singular/Plural:
- Singular: Ke [monna] yo o segole  
(It is a crippled man)
- Plural: Ke [banna] ba ba digole  
(They are crippled men)
- (b) Class 14:
- Nominal relative: Ke monna yo o [bogole]  
(It is a crippled man)
- Possessive: Ke monna [wa bogole]  
(It is a crippled man)

#### 2.4.40 [Sefofu/difofu] (Blind person)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions on appearance:

- (a) Singular/Plural:
- Singular: Ke [monna] yo o sefofu  
(It is a blind man)
- Plural: Ke [banna] ba ba difofu  
(They are blind men)
- (b) Class 14:
- Nominal relative: Ke monna yo o [bofofu]  
(It is a blind man)
- Possessive: Ke monna [wa bofofu]  
(It is a blind man)

### **SECTION B: THE NOMINAL-RELATIVE STEM MAY ALSO APPEAR WITH A POSSESSIVE [a]**

On Section A above most nominal relative stems also function as nouns. Such nouns may appear in this section with both functions as in Section A, i.e. a nominal function such as subject or object of a clause, as well as a descriptive function when it occurs as a nominal-relative stem. However, in this section all these nouns may appear as complement of

possessive [a] in a descriptive possessive. The following subcategories of these stems may be recognised:

### 1. Nominal Relative and Descriptive Possessive

Most of the nominal relative stems appear in the subcategory, i.e. all such nominal-relatives stems have a descriptive function as a complement of a copulative verb as well as complement of a possessive [a]: in all such cases there is no dissemble difference in the meaning of these two constructions:

#### 1.1 [Digwe] (Muscles . muscular)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Animate

Human:

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o digwe  
(It is a muscular man)

Possessive: Ke monna [wa digwe]  
(It is a muscular man)

Animal:

Nominal relative: Ke [kgomo] e e digwe  
(It is a muscular cow)

Possessive: Ke kgomo [ya digwe]  
(It is a muscular cow)

#### 1.2 [Dikgoka] (Muscular)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o dikgoka  
(It is a muscular man)

Possessive: Ke monna [wa dikgoka]  
(It is a muscular man)

#### 1.3 [Botsogo] (Healthy)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o botsogo  
(It is a healthy woman)

Possessive: Ke mosadi [wa botsogo]  
(It is a healthy woman)

## 1.4 [Pholo] (Healthy)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosetsana] yo o pholo  
(It is a healthy girl)

Possessive: Ke mosetsana [wa pholo]  
(It is a healthy girl)

## 1.5 [Boitekanelo] (Strong and healthy)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Animate

Human:

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o boitekanelo  
(It is a strong and healthy man)

Possessive: Ke monna [wa boitekanelo]  
(It is a strong and healthy man)

Animal:

Nominal relative: Ke [kgomo] e e boitekanelo  
(It is a strong and healthy cow)

Possessive: Ke kgomo [ya boitekanelo]  
(It is a strong and healthy cow)

## 1.6 [Matlhagatlhaga] (Active and energetic)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o matlhagatlhaga  
(It is an active and energetic woman)

Possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa matlhagatlhaga  
(It is an active and energetic woman)

## 1.7 [Maphikophiko] (Corpulent and bulky)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [motho] yo o maphikophiko  
(It is a corpulent and bulky person)

Possessive: Ke [motho] [wa maphikophiko]  
(It is a corpulent and bulky person)

## 1.8 [Matlepetlepe] (Fat and clumsy)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosimane] yo o matlepetlepe  
(It is a fat and clumsy boy)

Possessive: Ke [mosimane [wa matlepetlepe]]  
(It is a fat and clumsy boy)

## 1.9 [Bolepeledi] (Weak)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [ngwana] yo o bolepeledi  
(It is a weak child)

Possessive: Ke ngwana [wa bollepeledi]  
(It is a weak child)

## 1.10 [Botlhoko] (Painful)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Body parts

Nominal relative: Ke [ntho] e e botlhoko  
(It is a painful wound)

Possessive: Ke ntho [ya botlhoko]  
(It is a painful wound)

## 1.11 [Bosisi] (Numb)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Body parts

Nominal relative: Ke [letsogo] le le bosisi  
(It is a numb hand)

Possessive: Ke letsogo [la bosisi]  
(It is a numb hand)

## 1.12 [Mariri] (Hairy)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o mariri  
(It is a hairy man)

Possessive: Ke monna [wa mariri]  
(It is a hairy man)

## 1.13 [Seriri] (Shock-headed)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [motho] yo o seriri  
(It is a shock-headed person)

Possessive: Ke motho [wa seriri]  
(It is a shock-headed person)

## 1.14 [Matlhofe] (Jagged)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Hair

Nominal relative: Ke [moriri] o o matlhofe  
(It is a jagged hair)

Possessive: Ke moriri [wa matlhofe]  
(It is a jagged hair)

## 1.15 [Matsue] (Jagged)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Hair

Nominal relative: Ke [moriri] o o matsue  
(It is a jagged hair)

Possessive: Ke moriri [wa matsue]  
(It is a jagged hair)

## 1.16 [Sekgwa sa ditedu] (Bushy beard)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Beard

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o sekgwa sa ditedu  
(It is a bushy beard man)

Possessive: Ke monna [wa sekgwa sa ditedu]  
(It is a bushy beard man)

## 1.17 [Marago a polata] (Flat buttocks)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o marago a polata  
(It is a flat buttocks woman)

Possessive: Ke mosadi [wa marago a polata]  
(It is a flat buttocks woman)



## 1.18 [Diroto] (Protruding)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Eyes

Nominal relative: Ke [matlho] a a diroto  
(They are [protruding eyes])

Possessive: Ke matlho [a diroto]  
(They are protruding eyes)

## 1.19 [Motopo] (Protruding)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Mouth

Nominal relative: Ke [molomo] o o motopo  
(It is a protruding mouth)

Possessive: Ke [molomo] wa motopo  
(It is a protruding mouth)

## 1.20 [Matheneke] (Narrow-waisted)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosetsana] yo o matheneke  
(It is a narrow-waisted girl)

Possessive: Ke [mosetsana] wa matheneke  
(It is a narrow-waisted girl)

## 1.21 [Mangana] (Bulgy-jowled)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o mangana  
(It is a bulgy-jowled woman)

Possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa mangana  
(It is a bulgy-jowled woman)

## 1.22 [Marota] (Round shoulders)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o marota  
(It is a round-shouldered man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa marota  
(It is a round-shouldered man)

## 1.23 [Digoro] (Bowlegs)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Legs

Nominal relative: Ke [maoto] a a digoro  
(They are bowlegged legs)

Possessive: Ke [maoto] a digoro  
(They are bowlegged legs)

## 1.24 [Dikgonkgojane] (Short legs)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Legs

Nominal relative: Ke [maoto] a a dikgonkgojane  
(They are short legs)

Possessive: Ke [maoto] a dikgonkgojane  
(They are short legs)

## 1.25 [Molema] (Left)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [ngwana] yo o molema  
(It is a left-handed child)

Possessive: Ke [ngwana] wa molema  
(It is a left-handed child)

## 1.26 [Moja] (Right)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [letsogo] le le moja  
(It is a right hand)

Possessive: Ke [letsogo] la moja  
(It is a right hand)

## 1.27 [Magweregwere] (Hoarse)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Voice

Nominal relative: Ke [lentswe] le le magweregwere  
(It is a hoarse voice)

Possessive: Ke [lentswe] la magweregwere  
(It is a hoarse voice)

## 1.28 [Magogoša] (Hoarse)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Voice

Nominal relative: Ke [lentswe] le le magogoša  
(It is a hoarse voice)

Possessive: Ke [lentswe] la magogoša  
(It is a hoarse voice)

## 1.29 [Bokokoretsi] (Stammer)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [ngwana] yo o bokokoretsi  
(It is a stammering child)

Possessive: Ke [ngwana] wa bokokoretsi  
(It is a stammering child)

## 1.30 [Bogwete] (Naked)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Body part

Nominal relative: Ke [tlhogo] e e bogwete  
(It is a naked head)

Possessive: Ke [tlhogo] ya bogwete  
(It is a naked head)

## 1.31 [Bogonoko] (Naked)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Body

Nominal relative: Ke [mmele] o o bogonoko  
(It is a naked body)

Possessive: Ke [mmele] wa bogonoko  
(It is a naked body)

## 1.32 [Makwapa] (Scaly and rough)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Skin

Nominal relative: Ke [letlalo] le le makwapa  
(It is a scaly and rough skin)

Possessive: Ke [letlalo] la makwapa  
(It is a scaly and rough skin)

## 1.33 [Merwalo] (Pregnant)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Female

Nominal relative: Ke [mosetsana] yo o merwalo  
(It is a pregnant girl)

Possessive: Ke [mosetsana] wa merwalo  
(It is a pregnant girl)

## 1.34 [Morotooteng] (In calf)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Female animal

Nominal relative: Ke [kgomo] e e morotooteng  
(It is in calf cow)

Possessive: Ke [kgomo] ya morotooteng  
(It is the cow of in calf)

## 1.35 [Nemeru] (gravid)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Female animal

Nominal relative: Ke [kgomo] e e nemeru  
(It is a gravid cow)

Possessive: Ke [kgomo] ya nemeru  
(It is a cow of gravid)

## 1.36 [Bosusu] (deaf)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Animate

Nominal relative: Ke [dintšwa] tse di bosusu  
(They are deaf dogs)

Possessive: Ke [dintšwa] tsa bosusu  
(They are deaf dogs)

## 1.37 [Botlhotsi] (crippled)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o botlhotsi  
(It is a crippled man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa botlhotsi  
(It is a crippled man)

## 1.38 [Metsi] (wet)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Object

Nominal relative: Ke [tlhaga] e e metsi

(It is a wet grass)

Possessive: Ke [tlhaga] ya metsi

(It is a wet grass)

## 1.39 [Seola] (damp and moist)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Natural phenomenon

Nominal relative: Ke [mmu] o o seola

(It is a damp and moist soil)

Possessive: Ke [mmu] wa seola

(It is a damp and moist soil)

## 1.40 [Letobo] (misty)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Sky

Nominal relative: Ke [loapi] lo lo letobo

(It is a misty sky)

Possessive: Ke [loapi] la letobo

(It is a misty sky)

## 1.41 [Tlhololo] (pure)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Physical object

Nominal relative: Ke [gouta] e e tlhololo

(It is a pure gold)

Possessive: Ke [gouta] ya tlhololo

(It is a pure gold)

## 1.42 [Makgapila] (Dirty)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Physical object

Nominal relative: Ke [lapa] le le makgapila

(It is a dirty place/courtyard)

Possessive: Ke [llapa] la makgapila

(It is a dirty place/courtyard)

## 1.43 [Bogale] (Sharp)

(a) Selection restriction on the antecedent: Artifact: Household

Nominal relative: Ke [thipa] e e bogale

(It is a sharp knife)

Possessive: Ke [thipa] ya bogale

(It is a sharp knife)

(b) Selection restriction on the antecedent: Body part

Nominal relative: Ke [lenala] le le bogale

(It is a sharp nail)

Possessive: Ke [lenala] la bogale

(It is a sharp nail)

## 1.44 [Borethe] (Blunt)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Artifact: Household

Nominal relative: Ke [thipa] e e borethe

(It is a blunt knife)

Possessive: Ke [thipa] ya borethe

(It is a blunt knife)

## 1.45 [Borethe] (Smooth; slippery)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Physical object

Nominal relative: Ke [tsela] e e borethe

(It is a smooth road)

Possessive: Ke [tsela] ya borethe

(It is a smooth road)

## 1.46 [Matlapa] (Stony)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Place

Nominal relative: Ke [tsela] e e matlapa

(It is a stony road)

Possessive: Ke [tsela] ya matlapa

(It is a stony road)

## 1.47 [Moitiga] (Low-lying)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Place

Nominal relative: Ke [lefatshe] le le moitiga  
(It is a low-lying place)

Possessive: Ke [lefatshe] la moitiga  
(It is a low-lying place)

## 1.48 [Patsana] (Flat; thin)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Natural object

Nominal relative: Ke [letlapa] le le patsana  
(It is a flat and thin stone)

Possessive: Ke [letlapa] la patsana  
(It is a flat and thin stone)

## 1.49 [Matswakabele] (Winding)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Road

Nominal relative: Ke [tsela] e e matswakabele  
(It is a winding road)

Possessive: Ke [tsela] ya matswakabele  
(It is a winding road)

## 1.50 [Matshopetshope] (Twisting; curly)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Body part

Nominal relative: Ke [moriri] o o matshopetshope  
(It is a twisting and curly hair)

Possessive: Ke [moriri] wa matshopetshope  
(It is a twisting and curly hair)

## 1.51 [Makgawekgawe] (Uneven)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Road

Nominal relative: Ke [tsela] e e makgawekgawe  
(It is an uneven road)

Possessive: Ke [tsela] ya makgawekgawe  
(It is an uneven road)

## 1.52 [Makukunopu] (Knobby)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Place

Nominal relative: Ke [lelapa] le le makukunopu  
(It is a knobby place)

Possessive: Ke [lelapa] la makukunopu  
(It is a knobby place)

## 1.53 [Manobonobo] (Comfortable)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Artifact

Nominal relative: Ke [ntlo] e e manobonobo  
(It is a comfortable house)

Possessive: Ke [ntlo] ya manobonobo  
(It is a comfortable house)

## 1.54 [Mankoko] (Pleasant)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Artifact: Vehicle

Nominal relative: Ke [sejanaga] se se mankoko  
(It is a pleasant car)

Possessive: Ke [sejanaga] sa mankoko  
(It is a pleasant car)

## 1.55 [Masasapa] (Loose)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Natural phenomenon

Nominal relative: Ke [mmu] o o masasapa  
(It is a loose soil)

Possessive: Ke [mmu] wa masasapa  
(It is a loose soil)

## 1.56 [Malebeswa] (Loose)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Artifact

Nominal relative: Ke [kgole] e e malebeswa  
(It is a loose rope)

Possessive: Ke [kgole] ya malebeswa  
(It is a loose rope)



## 1.57 [Botlha] (Sour)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Liquid

Nominal relative: Ke [mašwi] a a botlha  
(It is sour milk)

Possessive: Ke [mašwi] a botlha  
(It is sour milk)

## 1.58 [Legou] (Rancid)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Body part

Nominal relative: Ke [serethe] se se legou  
(It is a rancid heel)

Possessive: Ke [serethe] sa legou  
(It is a rancid heel)

## 1.59 [Setsururu] (Insidid)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Food

Nominal relative: Ke [dijo] tse di setsururu  
(They are insipid food)

Possessive: Ke [dijo] tsa setsururu  
(They are insipid food)

## 1.60 [Setlasu] (Tasteless)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Liquid

Nominal relative: Ke [bojalwa] bo bo setlasu  
(It is a tasteless beer)

Possessive: Ke [bojalwa] ba setlasu  
(It is a tasteless beer)

## 1.61 [Bosula] (Tasteless; unpleasant)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Food

Nominal relative: Ke [dinawa] tse di bosula  
(They are tasteless beans)

Possessive: Ke [dinawa] tsa bosula  
(They are tasteless beans)

## 1.62 [Maphola] (Half-cooked)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Food

Nominal relative: Ke [dikgobe] tse di maphola  
(They are half-cooked beans)

Possessive: Ke [dikgobe] tsa maphola  
(They are half-cooked beans)

## 1.63 [Letswai] (Salty)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Food

Nominal relative: Ke [dijo] tse di letswai  
(They are salty food)

Possessive: Ke [dijo] tsa letswai  
(They are salty food)

## 1.64 [Boruma] (Tender)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Food

Nominal relative: Ke [nama] e e boruma  
(It is a tender meat)

Possessive: Ke [nama] ya boruma  
(It is a tender meat)

## 1.65 [Boremekwane] (Young and tender)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Food

Nominal relative: Ke [morogo] o o boremekwane  
(It is a young and tender vegetable)

Possessive: Ke [morogo] wa boremekwane  
(It is a young and tender vegetable)

## 1.66 [Lephere] (Slushy, sloppy)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Food

Nominal relative: Ke [dijo] tse di lephere  
(They are slushy food)

Possessive: Ke [dijo] tsa lephere  
(They are slushy food)

## 1.67 [Lerepa (Mushy; pappy; pulpy)]

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Natural phenomenon

Nominal relative: Ke [mmopa] o o lerapa  
(It is a puppy clay)

Possessive: Ke [mmopa] wa lerepa  
(It is a puppy clay)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Food

Nominal relative: Ke [moro] o o lerepa  
(It is a mushy gravy)

Possessive: Ke [moro] wa lerepa  
(It is a mushy gravy)

## 1.68 [Kwetlepa] (Stiff)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Food

Nominal relative: Ke [dijo] tse di kwetlepa  
(They are stiff food)

Possessive: Ke [dijo] tsa kwetlepa  
(They are stiff food)

## 1.69 [Tshume] (Thick; stiff)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Food

Nominal relative: Ke [bogobe] bo bo tshume  
(It is a thick, stiff porridge)

Possessive: Ke [bogobe] ba tshume  
(It is a thick, stiff porridge)

## 1.70 [Marere] (Gelatinous)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Food

Nominal relative: Ke [moro] o o marere  
(It is a gelatinous gravy)

Possessive: Ke [moro] wa marere  
(It is a gelatinous gravy)

## 1.71 [Mogodiri] (Green; unripe)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Vegetable

Nominal relative: Ke [mabele] a a mogodiri  
(They are green, unripe sorghum)

Possessive: Ke [mabele] a mogodiri  
(They are green, unripe sorghum)

## 1.72 [Letlapa] (Hard)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Liquid

Nominal relative: Ke [metsi] a a letlapa  
(It is a hard water)

Possessive: Ke [metsi] a letlapa  
(It is a hard water)

## 1.73 [Logwadi] (Hard)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Body part

Nominal relative: Ke [letlalo] le le logwadi  
(It is a hard skin)

Possessive: Ke [letlalo] la logwadi  
(It is a hard skin)

## 1.74 [Popota] (Hard)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Physical object

Nominal relative: Ke [logong] lo lo popota  
(It is a hard wood)

Possessive: Ke [logong] la popota  
(It is a hard wood)

## 1.75 [Botobetobe] (Soft)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Food

Nominal relative: Ke [leungo] le le botobetobe  
(It is a soft fruit)

Possessive: Ke [leungo] la botobetobe  
(It is a soft fruit)

## 1.76 [Manyema] (Soft)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Food

Nominal relative: Ke [namune] e e manyeme  
(It is a soft orange)

Possessive: Ke [namune] ya manyeme  
(It is a soft orange)

## 1.77 [Boleta] (Soft; fine)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Body part

Nominal relative: Ke [letsogo] le le boleta  
(It is a soft hand)

Possessive: Ke [letsogo] la boleta  
(It is a soft hand)

## 1.78 [Botsatsa] (Soft and flimsy)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Artifact

Nominal relative: Ke [mosese] o o boleta  
(It is a soft and flimsy dress)

Possessive: Ke [mosese] wa boleta  
(It is a soft and flimsy dress)

## 1.79 [Botlhofo] (Light)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Artifact

Nominal relative: Ke [merwalo] e e botlhofo  
(They are light goods)

Possessive: Ke [merwalo] ya botlhofo  
(They are light goods)

## 1.80 [Matlhaswa] (Coarse)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Food

Nominal relative: Ke [boupe] bo bo matlhaswa  
(It is a coarse meal)

Possessive: Ke [boupe] ba matlhaswa  
(It is a coarse meal)

## 1.81 [Manasa] (Coarse)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Food

Nominal relative: Ke [boupe] bo bo manasa  
(It is a coarse meal)

Possessive: Ke [boupe] ba manasa  
(It is a coarse meal)

## 1.82 [Magalejwa] (Coarse)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Natural phenomenon

Nominal relative: Ke [mmu] o o magelejwa  
(It is a coarse soil)

Possessive: Ke [mmu] wa magelejwa  
(It is a coarse soil)

## 1.83 [Lefifi] (Dark)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Natural phenomenon

Nominal relative: Ke [sekgwa] se se lefifi  
(It is a dark forest)

Possessive: Ke [sekgwa] sa lefifi  
(It is a dark forest)

## 1.84 [Bofitlha] (Obscure; faint)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Colour

Nominal relative: Ke [mmala] o o bofitlha  
(It is a faint colour)

Possessive: Ke [mmala] wa bofitlha  
(It is a faint colour)

## 1.85 [Marabaraba] (Speckled)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Animal

Nominal relative: Ke [kgogo] e e marabaraba  
(It is a speckled hen)

Possessive: Ke [kgogo] ya marabaraba  
(It is a speckled hen)

## 1.86 [Marabantha] (Dappled)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Animal

Nominal relative: Ke [pitse] e e marabantha  
(It is a dappled horse)

Possessive: Ke [pitse] ya marabantha  
(It is a dappled horse)

## 1.87 [Matabalaka] (Patchy; spotted)

(a) Selection restriction on the antecedent: Colour

Nominal relative: Ke [mmala] o o matabalaka  
(It is a spotted colour)

Possessive: Ke [mmala] wa matabalaka  
(It is a spotted colour)

(b) Selection restriction on the antecedent: Artifact

Nominal relative: Ke [mosese] o o matabalaka  
(It is a patchy dress)

Possessive: Ke [mosese] wa matabalaka  
(It is a patchy dress)

## 1.88 [Magabagakwe] (Multi-coloured)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Artifact

Nominal relative: Ke [lesela] le le magabagakwe  
(It is a multi-coloured cloth)

Possessive: Ke [lesela] la magabagakwe  
(It is a multi-coloured cloth)

## 1.89 [Bokgwafo] (Tame; kindhearted)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Animate

Animal:

Nominal relative: Ke [kgomo] e e bokgwafo  
(It is a tame cow)

Possessive: Ke [kgomo] ya bokgwafo  
(It is a tame cow)

Human:

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o bokgwafo  
(It is a kind-hearted man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa bokgwafo  
(It is a kind-hearted man)

## 1.90 [Pelotlhomogoi] (Sympathetic)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o pelotlhomogi  
(It is a sympathetic woman)

Possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa pelotlhomogi  
(It is a sympathetic woman)

## 1.91 [Bothitho] (Warm)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Physical object

Nominal relative: O na le [pelo] e e bothitho  
(He has a warm heart)

Possessive: O na le [pelo] ya bothitho  
(He has a warm heart)

## 1.92 [Boutlwelebotlhoko] (Merciful; sympathetic)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o boutlwelebotlhoko  
(He is a merciful woman)

Possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa boutlwelebotlhoko  
(He is a merciful woman)

## 1.93 [Kelotlhoko] (Attentive)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [ngwana] yo o kelotlhoko  
(It is an attentive child)

Possessive: Ke [ngwana] wa kelotlhoko  
(It is an attentive child)



## 1.94 [Boikanyego] (Faithful; reliable)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o boikanyego  
(It is a faithful, reliable woman)

Possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa boikanyego  
(It is a faithful, reliable woman)

## 1.95 [Bosapelo] (Accessible)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o bosapelo  
(It is an accessible man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa bosapelo  
(It is an accessible man)

## 1.96 [Botsalano] (Friendly)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o botsalano  
(It is a friendly woman)

Possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa botsalano  
(It is a friendly woman)

## 1.97 [Botshegisi] (Jokeful)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o botshegisi  
(It is a jokeful man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa botshegisi  
(It is a jokeful man)

## 1.98 [Metlae] (jokes)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o metlae  
(It is a jokeful man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa metlae  
(It is a jokeful man)

## 1.99 [Lethabo] (Hearty; jovial)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o lethabo  
(It is a hearty, jovial woman)

Possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa lethabo  
(It is a hearty, jovial woman)

## 1.100 [Bothusi] (Helpfulness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o bothusi  
(It is a helpful man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa bothusi  
(It is a helpful man)

## 1.101 [Pelotelele] (Patience)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o pelotelele  
(It is a patient woman)

Possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa pelotelele  
(It is a patient woman)

## 1.102 [Boitshoko] (Patience)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o boitshoko  
(It is a patient man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa boitshoko  
(It is a patient man)

## 1.103 [Boitumelo] (Happiness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o boitumelo  
(It is a happy man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa boitumelo  
(It is a happy man)

## 1.104 [Boipelo] (gladness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o boipelo

(It is a joyful woman)

Possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa boipelo

(It is a joyful woman)

## 1.105 [Tshego] (Lucky; fortunate)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosetsana] yo o tshego

(It is a lucky and fortunate girl)

Possessive: Ke [mosetsana] wa tshego

(It is a lucky and fortunate girl)

## 1.106 [Maikutlo] (Emotion)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o maikutlo

(It is an emotional man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa maikutlo

(It is an emotional man)

## 1.107 [Makoko] (Pride)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o makoko

(It is a proud man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa makoko

(It is a proud man)

## 1.108 [Mabela] (Pride)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [motho] yo o mabela

(It is a proud person)

Possessive: Ke [motho] wa mabela

(It is a proud person)

## 1.109 [Boikgogomosi] (Haughtiness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o boikgogomosi  
(It is a haughty woman)

Possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa boikgogomosi  
(It is a haughty woman)

## 1.110 [Majato] (Active; energetic)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o majato  
(It is an active and energetic man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa majato  
(It is an active and energetic man)

## 1.111 [Manontlhotlho] (Diligence)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosimane] yo o manontlhotlho  
(It is a diligent boy)

Possessive: Ke [mosimane] wa manontlhotlho  
(It is a diligent boy)

## 1.112 [Mafolofolo] (Enthusiasm)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o mafolofolo  
(It is an enthusiastic man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa mafolofolo  
(It is an enthusiastic man)

## 1.113 [Bogale] (Fierceness; bravery)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o bogale  
(It is a brave man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa bogale  
(It is a brave man)

## 1.114 [Maikaelelo] (Determination)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o maikaelelo  
(It is an ambitious woman)

Possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa maikaelelo  
(It is an ambitious woman)

## 1.115 [Pelompe] (Cruel)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o pelompe  
(It is a cruel man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa pelompe  
(It is a cruel man)

## 1.116 [Bodipa] (Aggressiveness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o bodipa  
(It is an aggressive man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa bodipa  
(It is an aggressive man)

## 1.117 [Mafega] (Haste; rudeness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o mafega  
(It is an over-hasty, rude man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa mafega  
(It is an over-hasty, rude man)

## 1.118 [Manganga] (Argument)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o manganga  
(It is an argumentative man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa manganga  
(It is an argumentative man)

## 1.119 [Bosilo] (Foolishness; viciousness, bad-temperedness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Animate

Human:

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o bosilo  
(It is a bad-tempered man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa bosilo  
(It is a bad-tempered man)

Animal:

Nominal relative: Ke [ntšwa] e e bosilo  
(It is a vicious dog)

Possessive: Ke [ntšwa] ya bosilo  
(It is a vicious dog)

## 1.120 [Peloethata] (Heartless)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o peloethata  
(It is a heartless woman)

Possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa peloethata  
(It is a heartless woman)

## 1.121 [Borumolani] (Aggressiveness and quarrelsomeness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosimane] yo o borumolani  
(It is aggressive and quarrelsome boy)

Possessive: Ke [mosimane] wa borumolani  
(It is a aggressive and quarrelsome boy)

## 1.122 [Kilo] (Hatred)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o kilo  
(It is a hateful woman)

Possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa kilo  
(It is a hateful woman)

## 1.123 [Letlhoo] (Hate)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o letlhoo  
(It is a hateful woman)

Possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa letlhoo  
(It is a hateful woman)

## 1.124 [Bosula] (Evil)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o bosula  
(It is an evil woman)

Possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa bosula  
(It is an evil woman)

## 1.125 [Bolotlhanyi] (Roguer)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o bolotlhanyi  
(It is a rogue man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa bolotlhanyi  
(It is a rogue man)

## 1.126 [Botsietsi] (Cunningness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o botsietsi  
(It is a cunning woman)

Possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa botsietsi  
(It is a cunning woman)

## 1.127 [Bodipa] (Impudence; obstinacy)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [ngwana] yo o bodipa  
(It is an obstinate child)

Possessive: Ke [ngwana] wa bodipa  
(It is an obstinate child)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Animal:

Nominal relative: Ke [poo] e e bodipa  
(It is an impudent bull)

Possessive: Ke [poo] ya bodipa  
(It is an impudent person)

1.128 [Tala] (Immature; uncouth)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosimane] yo o tala  
(It is immature, uncouth boy)

Possessive: Ke [mosimane] wa tala  
(It is immature, uncouth boy)

1.129 [Mathaithai] (Tricks)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o mathaithai  
(It is a tricky man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa mathaithai  
(It is a tricky man)

1.130 [Boi] (Cowardly; timid)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o boi  
(It is a cowardly woman)

Possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa boi  
(It is a cowardly woman)

1.131 [Magalamasuge] (Overhasty)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o magalamasuge  
(It is an overhasty man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa magalamasuge  
(It is an overhasty man)



## 1.132 [Bobalabadi] (Talkativeness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o bobalabadi  
(It is a talkative man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa bobalabadi  
(It is a talkative man)

## 1.133 [Matlhaswa] (Carelessness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [basadi] ba ba matlhaswa  
(They are careless women)

Possessive: Ke [basadi] ba matlhaswa  
(They are careless women)

## 1.134 [Matepe] (Irritating; annoying)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [ngwana] yo o matepe  
(It is an irritating and annoying child)

Possessive: Ke [ngwana] wa matepe  
(It is an irritating and annoying child)

## 1.135 [Bolaodi] (Officiousness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o bolaodi  
(It is an officious man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa bolaodi  
(It is an officious man)

## 1.136 [Marelelekwane] (Slipperiness; elusiveness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [legodu] le le marelelekwane  
(It is elusive, slippery thief)

Possessive: Ke [legodu] la marelelekwane  
(It is an elusive, slippery thief)

## 1.137 [Boitalo] (Self-willedness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [ngwana] yo o boitaolo  
(It is a self-willed child)

Possessive: Ke [ngwana] wa boitaolo  
(It is a self-willed child)

## 1.138 [Makgakga] (Impulsive, insolence)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o makgakga  
(It is an impudent, insolent woman)

Possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa makgakga  
(It is an impudent, insolent woman)

## 1.139 [Maaka] (Lies)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o maaka  
(It is a lying woman)

Possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa maaka  
(It is a lying woman)

## 1.140 [Boaki] (Lying)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o boaki  
(It is a lying woman)

Possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa boaki  
(It is a lying woman)

## 1.141 [Lefufa] (Jealousy)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o lefufa  
(It is a jealous woman)

Possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa lefufa  
(It is a jealous woman)

## 1.142 [Botswa] (Laziness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [ngwana] yo botswa  
(It is a lazy child)

Possessive: Ke [ngwana] wa botswa  
(It is a lazy child)

## 1.143 [Botagwa] (Drunkenness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o botagwa  
(It is a drunken man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa botagwa  
(It is a drunken man)

## 1.144 [Botlhapelwa] (Drunkenness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o botlhapelwa  
(It is a drunken woman)

Possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa botlhapelwa  
(It is a drunken woman)

## 1.145 [Bokgarakgatsegi] (Vagabondness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o bokgarakgatsegi  
(It is a vagabond woman)

Possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa bokgarakgatsegi  
(It is a vagabond woman)

## 1.146 [Bodutu] (Loneliness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [ngwana] yo o bodutu  
(It is a lonely child)

Possessive: Ke [ngwana] wa bodutu  
(It is a lonely child)

## 1.147 [Mongodi] (Listless)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [ngwana] yo o mongodi  
(It is a listless child)

Possessive: Ke [ngwana] wa mongodi  
(It is a listless child)

## 1.148 [Bokgwabo] (tameness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [pitse] e e bokgwabo  
(It is a tame horse)

Possessive: Ke [pitse] ya bokgwabo  
(It is a tame horse)

## 1.149 [Bonolo] (Gentleness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [ngwana] yo o bonolo  
(It is a gentle child)

Possessive: Ke [ngwana] wa bonolo  
(It is a gentle child)

## 1.150 [Bofetogi] (Vacillation)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o bofetogi  
(It is a vacillating man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa bofetogi  
(It is a vacillating man)

## 1.151 [Botlakala] (Uselessness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [ngwana] yo o botlakala  
(It is a useless child)

Possessive: Ke [ngwana] wa botlakala  
(It is a useless child)

## 1.152 [Botswafi] (feebleness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o botswafi  
(It is a feeble woman)

Possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa botswafi  
(It is a feeble woman)

## 1.153 [Botlhale] (Intelligence)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosimane] yo o botlhale  
(It is an intelligent boy)

Possessive: Ke [mosimane] wa botlhale  
(It is an intelligent boy)

## 1.154 [Bosweetsi] (Resoluteness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o bosweetsi  
(It is a resolute man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa bosweetsi  
(It is a resolute man)

## 1.155 [Boatlhodi] (Resoluteness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o boatlhodi  
(It is a resolute man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa boatlhodi  
(It is a resolute man)

## 1.156 [Boitseanape] (Brightness and alertness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o boitsanape  
(It is a bright and alert man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa boitsanape  
(It is a bright and alert man)

## 1.157 [Boruthwe] (Dullness; stupidity)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [mosimane] yo o boruthwe  
(It is a dull and stupid boy)

Possessive: Ke [mosimane] wa boruthwe  
(It is a dull and stupid boy)

## 1.158 [Botlhoka-kitso] (Empty-headedness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [motho] yo o botlhoka-kitso  
(It is an ignorant and empty-headed person)

Possessive: Ke [motho] wa botlhoka-kitso  
(It is an ignorant and empty-headed person)

## 1.159 [Boapu] (Foolishness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [motho] yo o boapu  
(It is a foolish person)

Possessive: Ke [motho] wa boapu  
(It is a foolish person)

## 1.160 [Bosilo] (Foolishness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o bosilo  
(It is a foolish man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa bosilo  
(It is a foolish man)

## 1.161 [Bokgoni] (Able)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o bokgoni  
(It is an able man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa bokgoni  
(It is an able man)

## 1.162 [Matsetseleko] (Skilfulness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [seopedi] se se matsetseleko  
(It is an expert singer)

Possessive: Ke [seopedi] sa matsetseleko  
(It is an expert singer)

## 1.163 [Mabogodika] (Handy)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [motho] yo o mabogodika  
(It is a handy person)

Possessive: Ke [motho] wa mabogodika  
(It is a handy person)

## 1.164 [Mafosi] (Inaccurate)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [kgetse] e e mafosi  
(It is an inaccurate case)

Possessive: Ke [kgetse] ya mafosi  
(It is an inaccurate case)

## 1.165 [Phoso] (Mistake)

(a) Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [motho] yo o phoso  
(It is a wrong person)

Possessive: Ke [motho] wa phoso  
(It is a wrong person)

(b) Selection restriction on the antecedent: Physical object

Nominal relative: Ke [mola] o o phoso  
(It is a wrong line)

Possessive: Ke [motho] wa phoso  
(It is a wrong line)

## 1.166 [Bofeswana] (Lightness; swiftness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Natural phenomenon

Nominal relative: Ke [phefo] e e bofeswana  
(It is a light and swift wind)

Possessive: Ke [phefo] ya bofeswana  
(It is a light and swift wind)

## 1.167 [Bonako] (Quick)

(a) Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o bonako  
(It is a quick man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa bonako  
(It is a quick man)

(b) Selection restriction on the antecedent: Artifact

Nominal relative: Ke [sejanaga] se se bonako  
(It is a quick car)

Possessive: Ke [sejanaga] sa bonako  
(It is a quick car)

## 1.168 [Bofefo] (Quick)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Artifact

Nominal relative: Ke [sejanaga] se se bofefo  
(It is a quick car)

Possessive: Ke [sejanaga] sa bofefo  
(It is a quick car)

## 1.169 [Bonya] (slow)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Animal

Nominal relative: Ke [pitse] e e bonya  
(It is a slow horse)

Possessive: Ke [pitse] ya bonya  
(It is a slow horse)



## 1.170 [Molemo] (Goodness; kindness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o molemo  
(It is a good man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa molemo  
(It is a good man)

## 1.171 [Botlhokwa] (Importance)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Action

Nominal relative: Ke [tiro] e e botlhokwa  
(It is an important work)

Possessive: Ke [tiro] ya botlhokwa  
(It is an important work)

## 1.172 [Sesolo] (Bargain)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Artifact

Nominal relative: Ke [seaparo] se se sesolo  
(It is an inexpensive clothes)

Possessive: Ke [seaparo] sa sesolo  
(It is an inexpensive clothes)

## 1.173 [Mankopa] (Hips)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Artifact

Nominal relative: Ke [koloji] e e mankopa  
(It is an inexpensive car)

Possessive: Ke [koloji] ya mankopa  
(It is an inexpensive car)

## 1.174 [Boitshepo] (Holiness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Natural phenomenon

Nominal relative: Ke [lefelo] le le boitshepo  
(It is a holy place)

Possessive: Ke [lefelo] la boitshepo  
(It is a holy place)

## 1.175 [Masisi] (Solemnity)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Event

Nominal relative: Ke [tiragalo] e e masisi  
(It is a solemn incident)

Possessive: Ke [tiragalo] ya masisi  
(It is a solemn incident)

## 1.176 [Bosula] (Evil; bad; nasty)

(a) Selection restriction on the antecedent: Action

Nominal relative: Ke [tiro] e e bosula  
(It is a bad work)

Possessive: Ke [tiro] ya bosula  
(It is a bad work)

(b) Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o bosula  
(It is an evil man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa bosula  
(It is an evil man)

## 1.177 [Molema] (Left-hand)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Communication

Nominal relative: Ke [kgang] e e molema  
(It is a nasty story)

Possessive: Ke [kgang] ya molema  
(It is a nasty story)

## 1.178 [Makgasa] (Tattered)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Artifact

Nominal relative: Ke [borukgwe] bo bo makgasa  
(It is a tattered trouser)

Possessive: Ke [borukgwe] ba makgasa  
(It is a tattered trouser)

## 1.179 [Dingalo] (Recurrent pain)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Action

Nominal relative: Ke [tiro] e e dingalo  
(It is a tiring work)

Possessive: Ke [tiro] ya dingalo  
(It is a tiring work)

## 1.180 [Boima] (Difficult)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Action

Nominal relative: Ke [tiro] e e boima  
(It is a difficult work)

Possessive: Ke [tiro] ya boima  
(It is a difficult work)

## 1.181 [Bokete] (Weight)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Action

Nominal relative: Ke [tiro] e e bokete  
(It is a difficult job)

Possessive: Ke [tiro] ya bokete  
(It is a difficult job)

## 1.182 [Matswakabele] (Intricacies)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Communication

Nominal relative: Ke [kgang] e e matswakabele  
(It is a complicated story)

Possessive: Ke [kgang] ya matswakabele  
(It is a complicated story)

## 1.183 [Mararanyane] (Intricacy)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Communication

Nominal relative: Ke [kgang] e e mararanyane  
(It is an intricate story)

Possessive: Ke [kgang] ya mararanyane  
(It is an intricate story)

## 1.184 [Botlhofo] (Easiness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Action

Nominal relative: Ke [tiro] e e botlhofo  
(It is an easy work)

Possessive: Ke [tiro] ya botlhofo  
(It is an easy work)

## 1.185 [Gole] (Far)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Place

Nominal relative: Ke [teropo] e e gole  
(It is a far town)

Possessive: Ke [teropo] ya gole  
(It is a far town)

## 1.186 [Kgakala] (Remote; distant)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Place

Nominal relative: Ke [motse] o o kgakala  
(It is a remote and distant village)

Possessive: Ke [motse] wa kgakala  
(It is a remote and distant village)

## 1.187 [Gaufi] (Near)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Place

Nominal relative: Ke [motse] o o gaufi  
(It is a near village)

Possessive: Ke [motse] wa gaufi  
(It is a near village)

## 1.188 [Mankopa] (Short)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Artifact

Nominal relative: Ke [mosese] o o mankopa  
(It is a short dress)

Possessive: Ke [mosese] wa mankopa  
(It is a short dress)

## 1.189 [Mpheetlane] (Shallow)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Artifact

Nominal relative: Ke [sejana] se se mpheetlane  
(It is a shallow plate)

Possessive: Ke [sejana] sa mpheetlane  
(It is a shallow plate)

## 1.190 [Malabolabo] (Oversized clothes)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Artifact

Nominal relative: Ke [jase] e e malabolabo  
(It is an oversized coat)

Possessive: Ke [jase] ya malabolabo  
(It is an oversized coat)

## 1.191 [Motlele] (Abundant)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Food

Nominal relative: Ke [dijo] tse di motlele  
(They are abundant food)

Possessive: Ke [dijo] tsa motlele  
(They are abundant food)

## 1.192 [Lolea] (Emptiness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Artifact

Nominal relative: Ke [kgamelo] e e lolea  
(It is an empty bucket)

Possessive: Ke [kgamelo] ya lolea  
(It is an empty bucket)

2. Singular and plural nouns

The noun may appear as in par. 1 above but it has to occur in the singular or plural:

## 2.1 [Bokolwane/makolwane] (Sturdiness &gt; sturdy)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: Human

Conditions of appearance:

Singular:

Nominal relative: Ke [mosimane] yo o bolokwane  
(It is a sturdy boy)

Possessive: Ke [mosimane] wa bolokwane  
(It is a sturdy boy)

Plural:

Nominal relative: Ke [basimane] ba ba makolwane  
(They are sturdy boys)

Possessive: Ke [basimane] ba makolwane  
(They are sturdy boys)

## 2.2 [Bolwetse/Malwetse] (ill)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: Human

Conditions of appearance:

Singular:

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o bolwetse  
(It is a sick woman)

Possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa bolwetse  
(It is a sick woman)

Plural:

Nominal relative: Ke [basadi] ba ba malwetse  
(They are sick women)

Possessive: Ke [basadi] ba malwetse  
(They are sick women)

## 2.3 [Boroko/maroko] (Sleep &gt; sleepy; drowsy)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: Human

Conditions of appearance:

Singular:

Nominal relative: Ke [ngwana] yo o boroko  
(It is a sleepy, drowsy child)

Possessive: Ke [ngwana] wa boroko  
(It is a sleepy, drowsy child)

Plural:

Nominal relative: Ke [bana] ba ba maroko  
(They are sleepy, drowsy children)

Possessive: Ke [bana] ba maroko  
(They are sleepy, drowsy children)

2.4 [Moriri/meriri] (Hair > hairy)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: Body parts

Conditions of appearance:

Singular:

Nominal relative: Ke [tlhogo] e e moriri  
(It is a hairy head)

Possessive: Ke [tlhogo] ya moriri  
(It is a hairy head)

Plural:

Nominal relative: Ke [ditlhogo] tse di meriri  
(They are hairy heads)

Possessive: Ke [ditlhogo] tsa meriri  
(They are hairy heads)

2.5 [Lefatla/mafatla] (Bald)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: Human

Conditions of appearance:

Singular:

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o lefatla  
(It is a bald man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa lefatla  
(It is a bald man)

Plural:

Nominal relative: Ke [banna] ba ba mafatla  
(They are bald men)

Possessive: Ke [banna] ba mafatla  
(They are bald men)

## 2.6 [Sefatlhego se setelele/difatlhego tse ditelele] (long face)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: Human

Conditions of appearance:

Singular:

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o sefatlhego se setelele  
(It is a long face woman)

Possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa sefatlhego se setelele  
(It is a long face woman)

Plural:

Nominal relative: Ke [basadi] ba ba difatlhego tse ditelele  
(They are long face women)

Possessive: Ke [basadi] ba difatlhego tse ditelele  
(They are long face women)

## 2.7 [nkgara/dinkgara] (Broad chest)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: Human

Conditions of appearance:

Singular:

Nominal relative: Ke [mosimane] yo o nkgara  
(It is a broad chest boy)

Possessive: Ke [mosimane] wa nkgara  
(It is a broad chest boy)

Plural:

Nominal relative: Ke [basimane] ba ba dinkgara  
(They are broad chest boys)

Possessive: Ke [basimane] ba dinkgara  
(They are broad chest boys)

## 2.8 [Mogapa/megapa] (Punctured eye &gt; sightless)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: Body part

Conditions of appearance:

Singular:

Nominal relative: Ke [leitlho] le le mogapa  
(It is a sightless eye)

Possessive: Ke [leitlho] la mogapa



(It is a sightless eye)

Plural:

Nominal relative: Ke [matlho] a a megapa  
(They are sightless eyes)

Possessive: Ke [matlho] a megapa  
(They are sightless eyes)

2.9 [Lebotsane/mabotsane] (Pot-belly)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: Human

Conditions of appearance:

Singular:

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o lebotsane  
(It is a pot-bellied man)

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa lebotsane  
(It is a pot-bellied man)

Plural:

Nominal relative: Ke [banna] ba ba mabotsane  
(They are pot-bellied men)

Possessive: Ke [banna] ba mabotsane  
(They are pot-bellied men)

2.10 [Lepono/mapono (Naked)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: Human

Conditions of appearance:

Singular:

Nominal relative: Ke [ngwana] yo o lepono  
(It is a naked child)

Possessive: Ke [ngwana] wa lepono  
(It is a naked child)

Plural:

Nominal relative: Ke [bana] ba ba mapono  
(They are naked children)

Possessive: Ke [bana] ba mapono  
(They are naked children)

## 2.11 [Motlhaba/metlhaba] (Sand)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: Soil

Conditions of appearance:

Singular:

Nominal relative: Ke [tsela] e e motlhaba  
(It is a sandy road)

Possessive: Ke [ditsela] tsa metlhaba  
(They are sandy roads)

## 2.12 [Segogoropo/digogorope] (Curve &gt; curved)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: Road

Conditions of appearance:

Singular:

Nominal relative: Ke [tsela] e e segogoropo  
(It is a curved road)

Possessive: Ke [tsela] ya segogoropo  
(It is a curved road)

Plural:

Nominal relative: Ke [ditsela] tse di digogoropo  
(They are curved roads)

Descriptive Possessive: Ke [ditsela] tsa digogoropo  
(They are curved roads)

## 2.13 [Bolea/malea] (Looseness &gt; loose)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: Artifact

Conditions of appearance:

Singular:

Nominal relative: Ke [mogala] o o bolea  
(It is a loose rope)

Descriptive Possessive: Ke [mogala] wa bolea  
(It is a loose rope)

Plural:

Nominal relative: Ke [megala] e e malea  
(They are loose ropes)

Descriptive Possessive: Ke [megala] ya malea  
(They are loose ropes)

#### 2.14 [Leswe/maswe] (Dirt)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: Human

Conditions of appearance:

Singular:

Nominal relative: Ke [ngwana] yo o leswe  
(It is a dirty child)

Descriptive Possessive: Ke [ngwana] wa leswe  
(It is a dirty child)

Plural:

Nominal relative: Ke [bana] ba ba maswe  
(They are dirty children)

Descriptive Possessive: Ke [bana] ba maswe  
(They are dirty children)

#### 2.15 [Sebete/dibete] (Liver, bravery > brave)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: Human

Conditions of appearance:

Singular:

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o sebete  
(It is a brave man)

Descriptive relative: Ke [monna] wa sebete  
(It is a brave man)

Plural:

Nominal relative: Ke [banna] ba ba dibete  
(They are brave men)

Descriptive Possessive: Ke [banna] ba dibete  
(They are brave men)

#### 2.16 [Setlhogo/ditlhogo] (Cruelty > cruel)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: Human

Conditions of appearance:Singular:

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o setlhogo

(It is a cruel man)

Descriptive Possessive: Ke [monna] wa setlhogo

(It is a cruel man)

Plural:

Nominal relative: Ke [banna] ba ba ditlhogo

(They are cruel men)

Descriptive Possessive: Ke [banna] ba ditlhogo

(They are cruel men)

## 2.17 [Seteneene/diteneene] (Stubbornness &gt; stubborn)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: AnimalConditions of appearance:Singular:

Nominal relative: Ke [esele] e e seteneene

(It is a stubborn donkey)

Descriptive Possessive: Ke [esele] ya seteneene

(It is a stubborn donkey)

Plural:

Nominal relative: Ke [diesele] tse di diteneene

(They are stubborn donkeys)

Descriptive Possessive: Ke [diesele] tsa diteneene

(They are stubborn donkeys)

## 2.18 [Tlhogo/ditlhogo] (Head &gt; intelligent)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: HumanConditions of appearance:Singular:

Nominal relative: Ke [ngwana] yo o tlhogo

(It is an intelligent child)

Descriptive Possessive Ke [ngwana] wa tlhogo

(It is an intelligent child)

Plural:

Nominal relative: Ke [bana] ba ba ditlhogo  
(They are intelligent children)

Descriptive Possessive: Ke [bana] ba ditlhogo  
(They are intelligent children)

## 2.19 [Morusu/merusu] (Violent)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: Human

Conditions of appearance:Singular:

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o morusu  
(It is a violent man)

Descriptive Possessive: Ke [monna] wa morusu  
(It is a violent man)

Plural:

Nominal relative: Ke [banna] ba ba merusu  
(They are violent men)

Descriptive Possessive: Ke [bana] ba merusu  
(They are violent men)

## 2.20 [Leketlo/maketlo] (Chip &gt; chipped)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: Artifact

Conditions of appearance:Singular:

Nominal relative: Ke [sejana] se se leketlo  
(It is a chipped plate)

Descriptive Possessive: Ke [sejana] sa leketlo  
(It is a chipped plate)

Plural:

Nominal relative: Ke [dijana] tse di leketlo  
(They are chipped plates)

Descriptive Possessive: Ke [dijana] tsa maketlo  
(They are chipped plates)

## 2.21 [Motlhotlho/metlhotlho] (Excessive load &gt; overfilled)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent:

Conditions of appearance:

Singular:

Nominal relative: Ke [kariki] e e motlhotlho  
(It is an overfilled cart)

Descriptive Possessive: Ke [kariki] ya motlhotlho  
(It is an overfilled cart)

Plural:

Nominal relative: Ke [dikariki] tse di metlhotlho  
(They are overfilled carts)

Descriptive Possessive: Ke [dikariki] tsa metlhotlho  
(They are overfilled carts)

3. Ambiguity in possessive

The noun may appear exactly as in par. 2 above, but the noun which appears as a complement of the possessive [a] may have an ambiguous reference between a reading of possessive and descriptive possessive. Only one such noun has been found.

[Senene/dinene] (Fool, oaf > oafish; foolish)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: Human

Singular:

Nominal relative: Ke [mosetsana] yo o senene  
(It is a foolish girl)

Possessive: Ke [mosetsana] wa senene  
(It is a girl of a foolish person)

Descriptive Possessive: Ke [mosetsane] wa senene  
(It is a foolish girl)

Plural:

Nominal relative: Ke [basadi] ba ba dinene  
(They are foolish women)

Possessive: Ke [basadi] ba ba dinene  
(They are foolish women)

Descriptive Possessive: Ke [basadi] ba dinene  
(They are foolish women)

#### 4. Derived class 14 nouns:

The noun may appear as in par. 1 above but it may also occur as a derived noun in class 14.

##### 4.1 [Makiritlana] (Well-built and short)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: Human

Conditions of appearance:

Nominal relative:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [mosetsana] yo o makiritlana  
(It is a well-built and short girl)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [mosetsana] yo o bokiritlana  
(It is a well-built and short girl)

Descriptive possessive:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [mosetsana] wa makiritlana  
(It is a well-built and short girl)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [mosetsana] wa bokiritlana  
(It is a well-built and short girl)

##### 4.2 [Popego] (Shapely)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: Human

Conditions of appearance:

Nominal relative:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [mosadi] yo o popego  
(It is a shapely body woman)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [mosadi] yo o bobopego  
(It is a shapely body woman)

Descriptive possessive:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [mosadi] wa popego  
(It is a shapely body woman)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [mosadi] wa bobopego  
(It is a shapely body woman)

## 4.3 [Masasapa] (Emaciated)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: AnimalConditions of appearance: Animal

Nominal relative:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [nku] e e masasapa  
(It is an emaciated sheep)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [nku] e e bosasapa  
(It is an emaciated sheep)

Descriptive possessive:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [nku] ya masasapa  
(It is an emaciated sheep)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [nku] ya bosasapa  
(It is an emaciated sheep)

## 4.4 [Thata] (Strong; hard)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: Human

Nominal relative:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [mosimane] yo o thata  
(It is a strong boy)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [mosimane] yo o thata  
(It is a strong boy)

Descriptive possessive:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [mosimane] wa thata  
(It is a strong boy)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [mosimane] wa bothata  
(It is a strong boy)

## 4.5 [Matsasarapa] (Lean with thin legs)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: HumanConditions of appearance:

Nominal relative:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [mosetsana] yo o matsasarapa  
(It is a lean with thin legs girl)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [mosetsana] yo o botsasarapa  
(It is a lean with thin legs girl)



Descriptive possessive:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [mosetsana] wa matsatsarapa  
(It is a lean with thin legs girl)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [mosetsana] wa botsatsarapa  
(It is a lean with thin legs girl)

#### 4.6 [Setsompa] (Well-built and short)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: Human

Conditions of appearance:

Nominal relative:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [monna] yo o setsompa  
(It is a well-built and short man)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [monna] wa botsompa  
(It is a well-built and short man)

Descriptive possessive:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [monna] wa setsompa  
(It is a well-built and short man)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [monna] wa botsompa  
(It is a well-built and short man)

#### 4.7 [Mafura] (Fat)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: Body part

Conditions of appearance:

Nominal relative:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [monna] yo o setsompa  
(It is a well-built and short man)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [monna] wa botsompa  
(It is a well-built and short man)

Descriptive possessive:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [monna] wa setsompa  
(It is a well-built and short man)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [monna] wa botsompa  
(It is a well-built and short man)

## 4.8 [Mareperepe] (Big with flabby flesh)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: HumanConditions of appearance:

Nominal relative:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [mosimane] yo o mareperepe  
(It is a big flabby flesh boy)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [mosimane]yo o boreperepe  
(It is a big with flabby flesh boy)

Descriptive possessive:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [mosimane] wa mareperepe  
(It is a big with flabby flesh boy)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [mosimane] wa boreperepe  
(It is a big with flabby flesh boy)

## 4.9 [Tlhogo-telele] (Large head)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: HumanConditions of appearance:

Nominal relative:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [monna] yo o tlhogo-telele  
(It is a large head man)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [monna] yo o botlhogo-telele  
(It is a large head man)

Descriptive possessive:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [monna] wa tlhogo-telele  
(It is a large head man)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [monna] wa botlhogo-telele  
(It is a large head man)

## 4.10 [Mašampa] (Naked)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: HumanConditions of appearance:

Nominal relative:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [ngwana] yo o mašampa  
(It is a naked child)

- (b) Class 14: Ke [ngwana] yo o bošampa  
(It is a naked child)

Descriptive possessive:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [ngwana] wa mašampa  
(It is a naked child)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [ngwana] wa bošampa  
(It is a naked child)

#### 4.11 [Pelonomi] (Kind)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: Human

Conditions of appearance:

Nominal relative:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [mosadi] yo o pelonomi  
(It is a kind woman)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [mosadi] yo o bopelonomi  
(It is a kind woman)

Descriptive possessive:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [mosadi] wa pelonomi  
(It is a kind woman)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [mosadi] wa bopelonomi  
(It is a kind woman)

#### 4.12 [Pelokgale] (Brave)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: Human

Conditions of appearance:

Nominal relative:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [monna] yo o pelokgale  
(It is a brave man)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [monna] yo o bopelokgale  
(It is a brave man)

Descriptive possessive:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [monna] wa pelokgale  
(It is a brave man)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [monna] wa bopelokgale  
(It is a brave man)

## 4.13 [Swele] (Merciless; Cruel)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: Human

Conditions of appearance:

Nominal relative:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [kgosi] e e swele  
(It is a merciless king)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [kgosi] e e boswele  
(It is a merciless king)

Descriptive possessive:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [kgosi] ya swele  
(It is a merciless king)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [kgosi] ya boswele  
(It is a merciless king)

## 4.14 [Kgopo] (Obstinate)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: Human

Conditions of appearance:

Nominal relative:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [ngwana] yo o kgopo  
(It is an obstinate child)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [ngwana] yo o bokgopo  
(It is an obstinate child)

Descriptive possessive:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [ngwana] wa kgopo  
(It is an obstinate child)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [ngwana] wa bokgopo  
(It is an obstinate child)

## 4.15 [Megagaru] (Greedy)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: Human

Conditions of appearance:

Nominal relative:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [mosadi] yo o megagaru  
(It is a greedy woman)

- (b) Class 14: Ke [mosadi] yo o bogagaru  
(It is a greedy woman)

Descriptive possessive:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [mosadi] wa megagaru  
(It is a greedy woman)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [mosadi] wa bogagaru  
(It is a greedy woman)

#### 4.16 [Pelotshetlha] (Greedy)

Selection restrictions on the antecedent: Human

Conditions of appearance:

Nominal relative:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [monna] yo o pelotshetlha  
(It is a greedy man)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [monna] yo o bopelotshetlha  
(It is a greedy man)

Descriptive possessive:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [monna] wa pelotshetlha  
(It is a greedy man)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [monna] wa bopelotshetlha  
(It is a greedy man)

#### 4.17 [Letshwenyo] (Troublesomeness > troublesome)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions of appearance:

Nominal relative:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [monna] yo o letshwenyo  
(It is a troublesome man)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [monna] yo o botshwenyo  
(It is a troublesome man)

Descriptive possessive:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [monna] wa letshwenyo  
(It is a troublesome man)

- (b) Class 14: Ke [monna] wa botshwenyo  
(It is a troublesome man)

#### 4.18 [Matlhajana] (Hasty, forward)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions of appearance:

Nominal relative:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [mosadi] yo o matlhajana  
(It is a hasty, forward woman)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [mosadi] yo o botlhajana  
(It is a hasty, forward woman)

Descriptive possessive:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [mosadi] wa matlhajana  
(It is a hasty, forward woman)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [mosadi] was botlhajana  
It is a hasty, forward woman)

#### 4.19 [Pelwana] (Quick-tempered)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions of appearance:

Nominal relative:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [monna] yo o pelwana  
(It is a quick-tempered man)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [monna] yo o bopelwana  
(It is a quick-tempered man)

Descriptive possessive:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [monna] wa pelwana  
(It is a quick-tempered man)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [monna] wa bopelwana  
It is a quick-tempered man)

## 4.20 [Ntwa-dumela] (Tempestuous)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions of appearance:

Nominal relative:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [monna] yo o ntwadumela  
(It is a tempestuous man)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [monna] yo o bontwadumela  
(It is a tempestuous man)

Descriptive possessive:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [monna] wa ntwadumela  
(It is a tempestuous man)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [monna] wa bontwadumela  
It is a tempestuous man)

## 4.21 [Logwadi] (Stubborn)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions of appearance:

Nominal relative:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [mosadi] yo o logwadi  
(It is a stubborn woman)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [mosadi] yo o bogwadi  
(It is a stubborn woman)

Descriptive possessive:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [mosadi] wa logwadi  
(It is a stubborn woman)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [mosadi] wa bogwadi  
It is a stubborn woman)

## 4.22 [Maitemogelo] (Experienced)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions of appearance:

Nominal relative:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [monna] yo o maitemogelo  
(It is an experienced man)

- (b) Class 14: Ke [monna] yo o boitemogelo  
(It is an experienced man)

Descriptive possessive:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [monna] wa maitemogelo  
(It is an experienced man)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [monna] wa boitemogelo  
It is an experienced man)

#### 4.23 [Nkane] (Rude, abusive)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions of appearance:

Nominal relative:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [monna] yo o nkane  
(It is a rude and abusive man)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [monna] yo o bonkane  
(It is a rude and abusive man)

Descriptive possessive:

- (a) Not class 14: Ke [monna] wa nkane  
(It is a rude and abusive man)
- (b) Class 14: Ke [monna] wa bonkane  
It is a rude and abusive man)

5. Singular and plural nouns as well as derived nouns. The noun may appear as in par. 2 and par. 4 above, i.e. in the singular or plural as well as in class 14:

#### 5.1 [Sekoa/dikoa/bokoa] (Weak; sickly person > weak and sickly)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Animate

- (a) Human: Ke [ngwana] yo o bokoa  
(It is a weak and sickly child)
- (b) Animal: Ke [kgomo] e e bokoa  
(It is a weak and sickly cow)

Conditions of appearance:

Singular/Plural



Singular:

Nominal relative: Ke [ngwana] yo o sekoa  
(It is a weak and sickly child)

Descriptive possessive: Ke [ngwana] wa sekoa  
(It is a weak and sickly child)

Plural:

Nominal relative: Ke [bana] ba ba dikoa  
(They are weak and sickly children)

Descriptive possessive: Ke [bana] ba dikoa  
(They are weak and sickly children)

Class 14

Nominal relative: Ke [ngwana] yo o bokoa  
(It is a weak and sickly child)

Descriptive possessive: Ke [ngwana] wa bokoa  
(It is a weak and sickly child)

## 5.2 Sefonthwana/difonthwana/bofonthwana] (Well-built and short)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Animate

(a) Human: Ke [monna] yo o bofonthwana  
(It is a well-built and short man)

(b) Animal: Ke [pitse] e e bofonthwana  
(It is a well-built and short horse)

Conditions of appearance:Singular/PluralSingular:

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o sefonthwana  
(It is a well-built and short man)

Descriptive possessive: Ke [monna] wa sefonthwana  
(It is a well-built and short man)

Plural:

Nominal relative: Ke [banna] ba ba difonthwana  
(They are well-built and short men)

Descriptive possessive: Ke [banna] ba difonthwana  
(They are well-built and short men)

Class 14

- Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o bofonthwana  
(It is a well-built and short man)
- Descriptive possessive: Ke [monna] wa bofonthwana  
(It is a well-built and short man)

## 5.3 [Motwenene/metwenene/botwenene] (Dead straight)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Inanimate

- (a) Body part: Ke [monwana] o o botwenene  
(It is a dead-straight fiinger)
- (b) Road: Ke [tsela] e e botwenene  
(It is a dead straight road)

Conditions of appearance:

Singular/PluralSingular:

- Nominal relative: Ke [monwana] o o motwenene  
(It is a dead straight finger)
- Descriptive possessive: Ke [monwana] wa motwenene  
(It is a dead straight finger)

Plural:

- Nominal relative: Ke [menwana] e e metwenene  
(They are dead straight fingers)
- Descriptive possessive: Ke [menwana] ya metwenene  
(They are dead straight fingers)

Class 14

- Nominal relative: Ke [monwana] o o botwenene  
(It is a dead straight finger)
- Descriptive possessive: Ke [monwana] wa botwenene  
(It is a dead straight finger)

## 5.4 [Lekoro/makoro/bokoro] (Stooped)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Animate

- (a) Human: Ke [monnamogolo] yo o bokoro  
(It is a stooped old man)

- (b) Animal Ke [kamela] e e bokoro  
(It is a stooped camel)

Conditions of appearance:

Singular/Plural

Singular:

Nominal relative: Ke [monnamogolo] yo o lekoro  
(It is a stooped old man)

Descriptive possessive: Ke [monnamogolo] wa lekoro  
(It is a stooped old man)

Plural:

Nominal relative: Ke [bannabagolo] ba ba makoro  
(They are stooped old men)

Descriptive possessive: Ke [bannabagolo] ba makoro  
(They are stooped oldmen)

Class 14

Nominal relative: Ke [monnamogolo] yo o bokoro  
(It is a stooped old man)

Descriptive possessive: Ke [monnamogolo] wa bokoro  
(It is a stooped old man)

5.5 [Monape/menape/bonape] (Long)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Physical object

(a) Leather instrument: Ke [kgole] e e bonape  
(It is a long rope)

(b) Road: Ke [tsela] e e bonape  
(It is a long road)

Conditions of appearance:

Singular/Plural

Singular:

Nominal relative: Ke [kgole e e monape  
(It is a long rope)

Descriptive possessive: Ke [kgole] ya monape  
(It is a long rope)

Plural:

Nominal relative: Ke [dikgole]tse di menape  
(They are long ropes)

Descriptive possessive: Ke [dikgole] tsa menape  
(They are long ropes)

Class 14

Nominal relative: Ke [kgole] e e bonape  
(It is a long rope)

Descriptive possessive: Ke [kgole] ya bonape  
(It is a long rope)

## 5.6 [Leferetlho/maferetlho/boferetlho] (Troublesomeness)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Animate

(a) Human: Ke [monna] yo o boferetlho  
(It is a troublesome man)

(b) Animal: Ke [ntšwa] e e leferetlho  
(It is a troublesome dog)

Conditions of appearance:Singular/PluralSingular:

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o leferetlho  
(It is a troublesome man)

Descriptive possessive: Ke [monna] yo o leferetlho  
(It is a troublesome man)

Plural:

Nominal relative: Ke [banna] ba ba maferetlho  
(They are troublesome men)

Descriptive possessive: Ke [banna] ba maferetlho  
(They are troublesome men)

Class 14

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o boferetlho  
(It is a troublesome man)

Descriptive possessive: Ke [monna] wa boferetlho  
(It is a troublesome man)

6. Ambiguity

The noun may appear as in par. 5 above but when it occurs as a complement of the possessive [a] it has an ambiguous reading between possessive and descriptive possessive when it appears in the singular or plural. In class 14 it has no ambiguous reading:

Human Characteristics

## 6.1 [Mosiami] (Good and righteous person &gt; good and righteous)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions of appearance:

Singular/PluralSingular:

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o mosiami

(It is a good woman)

Possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa mosiami

(It is a woman of a good person)

Descriptive possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa mosiami

(It is a good woman)

Plural:

Nominal relative: Ke [basadi] ba ba basiami

(They are good women)

Possessive: Ke [basadi] ba basiami

(They are women of good persons)

Descriptive possessive: Ke basadi ba basiami

(They are good women)

Class 14

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o bosiami

(It is a good woman)

Descriptive possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa bosiami

(It is a good woman)

## 6.2 [Setlhakana-tlhogo] (Madness &gt; mad person)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions of appearance:

Singular/Plural

Singular:

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o setlhakana-tlhogo  
(It is a man woman)

Possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa setlhakana-tlhogo  
(It is a woman of a mad person)

Descriptive possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa setlhakana-tlhogo  
(It is a mad woman)

Plural:

Nominal relative: Ke [basadi] ba ba ditlhakana-tlhogo  
(They are mad women)

Possessive: Ke [basadi] ba ditlhakana-tlhogo  
(They are women of mad people)

Descriptive possessive: Ke [basadi] ba ditlhakana-tlhogo  
(They are mad women)

Class 14

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o botlhakana-tlhogo  
(It is a mad woman)

Descriptive possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa botlhakana-tlhogo  
(It is a mad woman)

## 6.3 [Modidi] (Poor)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions of appearance:

Singular/Plural

Singular:

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o modidi  
(It is a poor woman)

Possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa modidi  
(It is a woman of poor man)

Descriptive possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa modidi  
(It is a poor woman)

Plural:

Nominal relative:	Ke [basadi] ba ba bodidi (They are poor women)
Possessive:	Ke [basadi] ba bodidi (They are women of poor men)
Descriptive possessive:	Ke [basadi] ba bodidi (They are poor women)

Class 14

Nominal relative:	Ke [mosadi] yo o bodidi (It is a poor woman)
Descriptive possessive:	Ke [mosadi] [wa bodidi] (It is a poor woman)

7. Descriptive possessives only

The noun may only appear as a complement of a possessive [a] where it is ambiguous between a possessive and descriptive possessive. These nouns have to occur in the singular or plural as indicated above. They may also occur in class 14 but then they are nominal relative stems or complements in a descriptive possessive only:

## 7.1 [Mokopi/bakopi/bokopi] (Poor person &gt; poor)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions of appearance:

Singular/PluralSingular:

Possessive:	Ke [mosadi] wa mokopi (It is a woman of a poor man)
Descriptive Possessive:	Ke [mosadi] wa mokopi (It is a poor woman) (It is a woman of poor man)

Plural:

Possessive:	Ke [basadi] ba bakopi (They are women of poor men)
Descriptive Possessive:	Ke [basadi] ba bakopi (They are poor women)

Class 14

Nominal relative: Ke [mosadi] yo o bokopi  
(It is a poor woman)

Descriptive possessive: Ke [mosadi] wa bokopi  
(It is a poor woman)

## 7.2 [Motlhoki] (Poor)

[Motlhoki/batlhoki/botlhoki] (Poor)

Selection restriction on the antecedent: Human

Conditions of appearance:

Singular/Plural

Singular:

Possessive: Ke [monna] wa motlhoki  
(It is the man of a poor woman)

Descriptive Possessive: Ke [monna] wa motlhoki  
(It is a poor man)

Plural:

Possessive: Ke [banna] ba batlhoki  
(They are men of poor women)

Descriptive Possessive: Ke [banna] ba batlhoki  
(They are poor men)

Class 14

Nominal relative: Ke [monna] yo o botlhoki  
(It is a poor man)

Descriptive possessive: Ke [monna] wa botlhoki  
(It is a poor man)

## 6. SEMANTIC FEATURES OF NOMINAL-RELATIVE STEMS AND COMPLEMENTS OF A DESCRIPTIVE POSSESSIVE [a]

### 6.1 Qualification:

This semantic feature refers to something that limits the force of a statement by agreeing or disagreeing with it, i.e. as either right or wrong and inaccurate.



### 6.1.1 [Mafosi] (Inaccurate)

- 1(a) Ke [karabo] e e mafosi  
(It is an inaccurate answer)
- (b) Ke [karabo] ya mafosi  
(It is an inaccurate answer)

### 2. [Phoso] (Wrong)

- 2(a) Ke [mola] o o phoso  
(It is a wrong line)
- (b) Ke [mola] wa phoso  
(It is a wrong line)

## 6.2 Speed

This term refers to the quickness of movement or action and it may include the antonyms quick vs slow:

- 1. [Bofeswana] (Light and swift)
  - (a) Ke [phefo] e e bofeswana  
(It is a light, swift wind)
  - (b) Ke [phefo] ya bofeswana  
It is a light, swift wind)
- 2. [Bonako, bofefo] (Quick)
  - (a) Ke [phefo] e e bonako  
(It is a light, swift wind)
  - (b) Ke [phefo] ya bonako  
It is a light, swift wind)
- 3. (a) Ke [mokgwa] o o bofefo  
(It is a quick method)
- (b) Ke [mokgwa] wa bofefo  
(It is a quick method)

4. [Bonya] (Slow)
  - (a) Ke [pitse] e e bonya  
(It is a slow horse)
  - (b) Ke [pitse] ya bonya  
(It is a slow horse)

### 6.3 Distance

This term refers to the amount of separation in space or time, i.e. the amount of space between two points:

1. [Gole] (far)
  - (a) Ke [toropo] e e gole  
(It is a far-off town)
  - (b) Ke [toropo] ya gole  
(It is a far-off town)
  
2. [Kgakala] (Remote)
  - (a) Ke [motse] o o kgakala  
(It is a remote and distant village)
  - (b) Ke [motse] wa kgakala  
(It is a remote and distant village)
  
3. [Gaufi] (Near)
  - (a) Ke [motse] o o gaufi  
(It is a nearby village)
  - (b) Ke [motse] wa gaufi  
(It is a nearby village)

### 6.4 Difficulty

This type of stem denotes the fact or quality of being difficult, i.e. needing a lot of effort, skill, hard to do, understand, or deal with, giving trouble.

1. Difficult

[Boima, bokete] (Difficult)

- (a) Ke [dithuto] tse di boima  
(They are difficult studies)
- (b) Ke [dithuto] tsa boima  
(They are difficult studies)
  
- (a) Ke [tiro] e e bokete  
(It is a difficult job)
- (b) Ke [tiro] ya bokete  
(It is a difficult job)

2. Complicated

[Matswakabele] (Complicated)

- (a) Ke [kgang] e e matswakabele  
(It is a complicated story)
- (b) Ke [kgang] ya matswakabele  
(It is a complicated story)

3. Intricate

[Mararanyane] (Intricate)

- (a) Ke [kgang] e e mararanyane  
(It is an intricate story)
- (b) Ke [kgang] ya mararanyane  
(It is an intricate story)

4. Easy

[Botlhofo] (Easy)

- (a) Ke [tiro] e e botlhofo  
(It is an easy work)
- (b) Ke [tiro] ya botlhofo  
(It is an easy work)

## 6.5 Value

The term refers to the usefulness, helpfulness or importance of something especially in comparison with the things and it may refer to the antonyms expressing good vs bad value.

### 1. Good value

#### 1.1 [Molemo] (Good)

- (a) Ke [monna] yo o molemo  
(It is a good man)
- (b) Ke [monna] wa molemo  
(It is a good man)

#### 1.2 [Botoka] (Better) : No possessive

- (a) Ke [ngwana] yo o botoka  
(It is a better child)

#### 1.3 [Pila] (Beautiful) : No possessive

- (a) Ke [mosetsana] yo o pila  
(It is a beautiful girl)

#### 1.4 [Botlhokwa] (Important)

- (a) Ke [tiro] e e botlhokwa  
(It is an important work)
- (b) Ke [tiro] ya botlhokwa  
(It is an important work)

#### 1.5 [Sesolo, mankopa] (Inexpensive)

- (a) Ke [seaparo] se se sesolo  
(It is an inexpensive garment)
  - (b) Ke [seaparo] sa sesolo  
(It is an inexpensive garment)
- 
- (a) Ke [koloji] e e mankopa  
(It is an inexpensive car)

- (b) Ke [koloji] ya mankopa  
(It is an inexpensive car)

1.6 [Boitshepo] (Holy)

- (a) Ke [lefelō] le le boitshepo  
(It is a holy place)
- (b) Ke [lefelō] la boitshepo  
(It is a holy place)

1.7 [Masisi] (Solemn)

- (a) Ke [tiragalo] e e masisi  
(It is a solemn incident)
- (b) Ke [tiragalo] ya masisi  
(It is a solemn incident)

1.8 [Bosula] (Evil)

- (a) Ke [monna] yo o bosula  
(It is an evil man)
- (b) Ke [monna] wa bosula  
(It is an evil man)

1.9 [Molema] (Bad, nasty)

- (a) Ke [tiro] e e molema  
(It is a bad work)
  - (b) Ke [tiro] ya molema  
(It is a bad work)
- 
- (a) Ke [kgang] e e molema  
(It is a nasty story)
  - (b) Ke [kgang] ya molema  
(It is a nasty story)

- (a) Ke [kgang] e e molema  
(It is a nasty story)
- (b) Ke [kgang] ya molema  
(It is a nasty story)

#### 1.10 [Kotsi] (Dangerous)

- (a) Ke [thaba] e e kotsi  
(It is a dangerous mountain)
- (c) Ke [thaba] ya kotsi  
(It is a dangerous mountain)

#### 1.11 [Makgasa] (Tattered)

- (a) Ke [borukgwe] bo bo makgasa  
(It is a tattered trouser)
- (b) Ke [borukgwe] ba makgasa  
(It is a tattered trouser)

#### 1.12 [Leketlo] (Chipped)

- (a) Ke [sejana] se se leketlo  
(It is a chipped plate)
- (b) Ke [sejana] sa leketlo  
(It is a chipped plate)

## 6.6 Dimension

The term dimension indicates a measurement in any one direction for establishing the position of something in space.

### 1. Length

#### 1.1 (Monape] (Long)

- (a) Ke [kgole] e e monape  
(It is a long rope)
- (b) Ke [kgole] ya monape  
(It is a long rope)

1.2 (Mankopa] (Short) : No possessive

(a) Ke [mosese] o o mankopa

(It is a short dress)

1.3 (Legero] (Round) : No possessive

(a) Ke [tsela] e e legero

(It is a semi-circular road)

1.4 (Boteng] (Deep) : No possessive

(a) Ke [mosima] o o boteng

1.5 (Maphara; mpheetlane] (Shallow)

(a) Ke [pitsa] e e maphara

(It is a shallow pot)

(b) Ke [pitsa] ya maphara

(It is a shallow pot)

(a) Ke [sejana] se se mpheetlane

(It is a shallow plate)

(b) Ke [sejana] sa mpheetlane

(It is a shallow plate)

1.6 (Bophara] (Width)

(a) Ke [kgoro] e e bophara

(It is a wide door)

(b) Ke [kgoro] ya bophara

(It is a wide door)

2. Size

2.1 [Malabolabo] (Oversized)

(a) Ke [jase] e e malabolabo

(It is an oversized coat)

(b) Ke [jase] ya malabolabo

(It is an oversized coat)

- 2.2 [Motlhotlho] (Overfilled)
- (a) Ke [kariki] e e motlhotlho  
(It is an overfilled cart)
- (b) Ke [kariki] ya motlhotlho
- 2.3 [Motlele] (Abundant)
- (a) Ke [dijo] tse di motlele  
(It is abundant food)
- (b) Ke [dijo] tsa motlele  
(It is abundant food)
- 2.4 [Kompa] (Wholeness) : No possessive
- (a) Ke [lee] le le kompa  
(It is a whole egg)
- 2.5 [Lolea; lephaka] (Emptiness)
- (a) Ke [kgamelo] e e lolea  
(It is an empty bucket)
- (a) Ke [kgetse] e e lephaka  
(It is an empty bag)

## 6.7 Physical property

This term refers to a certain quality of material things or the body of a person as opposed to things of the mind. Such qualities may be divided into various subcategories. A summarised list of such categories is given below:

### 1. QUALITIES OF THE BODY

#### 1.1 Good shape of the body

1.1.1 Muscular [polokwe, digwe, dikgoka] (no possessive, no noun)

1.1.2 Well-built and short [sefonthwana, setsompa, makiritlana]

1.1.3 Shapely [popego]

1.1.4 Strong [senatla, thata] (no possessive, person)

1.1.5 Tall and strong [mokaloba] (no possessive, person)

1.1.6 Sturdy [bokolwane]



- 1.1.7 Supply [bonyemeku] (no possessive)
- 1.1.8 Light-footed [bofefe] (no possessive)
- 1.1.9 Healthy [botsogo, pholo]
- 1.1.10 Strong and healthy [boitekanelo]
- 1.1.11 Energetic [phetakapejane, matlhagathaga] (no possessive, person)
- 1.1.12 Slender and tall [motsotsoropa, letlharapa] (no possessive, person)

## 1.2. **Bad shape of the body**

- 1.2.1 Emaciated [malololo] (no possessive)
  - [mokogo] (no possessive, animal)
  - [lewalala] (no possessive, person)
  - [masasapa, mararampha]
- 1.2.2 Lean with thin legs [matsatsarapa]
- 1.2.3 Stooped [lekoru]
- 1.2.4 Lean with protruding stomach [serathane] (no possessive, person)
- 1.2.5 Albino [leswafe] (no possessive, person)
- 1.2.6 Flabby [matlabua] (no possessive)
- 1.2.7 Sebinita [stout] (no possessive, person)
- 1.2.8 Useless and flabby [motlepere] (no possessive, person)
- 1.2.9 Corpulent and bulky [maphikophiko]
- 1.2.10 Fat and clumsy [matlepetlepe]
- 1.2.11 Fat [mafura]
- 1.2.12 Big and flabby [mareperepe]
- 1.2.13 Very short [sekatana] (no possessive, person)
- 1.2.14 Short and corpulent [sebetwane] (no possessive, person)
- 1.2.15 Dwarf [lemponempone] (no possessive, person)
- 1.2.16 Weak [bokoa, bolepeledi]
- 1.2.17 Sick [bolwetse]
- 1.2.18 Decrepit [sekgakgarua] (no possessive, person)
- 1.2.19 Comatose [serepa] (no possessive, person)
- 1.2.20 Feeling in body
  - 1.2.20.1 Pain [botlhoko]
  - 1.2.20.2 Drowsy [boroko]
  - 1.2.20.3 Numb [bosisi]

### 1.3. **Body Part**

#### 1.3.1 Hair

1.3.1.1 Hairy [mariri, moriri]

1.3.1.2 Unkempt hair [seriri]

1.3.1.3 Bald head [lefatla]

1.3.1.4 Jagged hair [matlhofe, matsue]

1.3.1.5 Busy beard [sekgwa sa ditedu]

#### 1.3.2 Head

1.3.2.1 Large head [tlhogo-telele]

1.3.2.2 Large face [sefatlhego se setelele]

#### 1.3.3 Chest: Broad [nkgara]

#### 1.3.4 Eyes

1.3.4.1 Sightless [mogapa]

1.3.4.2 Protruding [diroto]

#### 1.3.5 Mouth: Protruding [motopo]

#### 1.3.6 Waist: Narrow waisted [matheneke]

#### 1.3.7 Stomach: Pot-bellied [lebotsane]

#### 1.3.8 Jaw: Bulgy-jawled [mangana]

#### 1.3.9 Shoulders: Rounded [marota]

#### 1.3.10 Legs

1.3.10.1 Bowlegged [digoro]

1.3.10.2 Short-legged [dikgonkgoijane]

#### 1.3.11 Hand

1.3.11.1 Left-handed [molema] (no possessive)

1.3.11.2 Right-handed [moja]

**1.3.12 Voice**1.3.12.1 Hoarse [magweregwere, magogoša]1.3.12.2 Stammering [bokokoretsi]1.3.12.3 Body: naked [mašampa, lepono, bogwete, bogonoko]**1.3.12 Skin: Rough** [makwapa]**1.3.13 Pregnant**1.3.15.1 Person [merwalo]1.3.15.2 Animal [morotooteng, nemeru]**1.4 Physically disadvantaged**1.4.1 Deaf [bosusu] (susu: no possessive, person)1.4.2 Deaf and dumb [segwana] (no possessive, person)1.4.3 Disabled [sekoka] (no possessive, person)1.4.4 Crippled [segole] (no possessive, person)1.4.5 Blind [sefofu] (no possessive, person)**2. QUALITIES OF OBJECTS****2.1 Quality of Temperature****2.1.1 Hot**2.1.1.1 Warm [bolelo, bothitho] (no possessive)2.1.1.2 Lukewarm [motlha] (no possessive)2.1.2 Cold [tsididi] (no possessive, no noun)**2.2 Quality of Wetness**2.2.1 Wet [metsi]2.2.2 Damp and moist [seola]2.2.3 Misty [letobo]**2.3 Quality of Cleanliness**2.3.1 Clean [phepa] (no possessive, no noun)2.3.2 Pure [tthololo]2.3.3 Dirty [makgapila, leswe]

## 2.4 **Quality of Instruments**

2.4.1 Sharp [bogale]

2.4.2 Blunt [borethe]

## 2.5 **Quality of Soil**

2.5.1 Sandy [motlhaba]

2.5.2 Stony [matlapa]

2.5.3 Loose soil [masasapa]

## 2.6 **Quality of Road**

2.6.1 Straight [motwenene]

2.6.2 Winding [manyokenyoke, matswakabele]

2.6.3 Curved [segogoropo]

2.6.4 Twisting [matshophetshophe]

2.6.5 Uneven [makgawekgawe]

## 2.7 **Quality of Place**

2.7.1 Low-lying area [moitiga]

2.7.2 Knobby [makukunopu]

## 2.8 **Quality of Object**

2.8.1 Flat and thin [patsana]

2.8.2 Smooth [borethe]

2.8.3 Comfortable [manobonobo]

2.8.4 Pleasant [mankoko]

2.8.5 Loose [bolea, malebeswa]

## 2.9 **Quality of Food**

2.9.1 Taste

2.9.1.1 Delicious [monate] (no possessive)

2.9.1.2 Sour [botlha]

2.9.1.3 Rancid [legou]

2.9.1.4 Insipid [setsurutsuru]

2.9.1.5 Tasteless [setlasu, bosula]

2.9.1.6 Half-cooked [maphola]

2.9.1.7 Salty [letswai]2.9.2 Tender food2.9.2.1 Tender [boruma]2.9.2.2 Young and tender [boremekwane]2.9.3 Pulpy food2.9.3.1 Slushy [lephere]2.9.3.2 Mushy [lerepa]2.9.4 Stiff food2.9.4.1 Stiff [kwetlepa]2.9.4.2 Thick and stiff [tshume]2.9.4.3 Gelatinous [marere]2.9.5 Unripe food [mogodiri]**2.10 Quality of Texture**2.10.1 Hard [letlapa, thata, logwadi, popota]2.10.2 Soft [botobetobe, manyeme, boleta, botsatsa]2.10.3 Light [botlhofo]2.10.4 Coarse [manasa, magelejwa] [matlhaswa] (no possessive person)**2.11 Quality of Hue**2.11.1 Dark [lefifi]2.11.2 Faint [bofitlha]2.11.3 Spotted [marabaraba, marabantha, matabalaka]

Examples of noun phrases with these stems above are given below and the list of stems above, it is frequently stated that a certain stem may not appear as a complement of a possessive [a] via descriptive possessive. This name has been dealt with in detail in section 5 of this chapter and the references above to this name is to serve as an explanation why certain stems do not appear below in descriptive possessives:

## 1.1.1 [Polokwe, digwe, dikgoka] (Muscular)

1. Ke [motho] yo o polokwe  
(It is a muscular person)
- 2(a) Ke [monna] yo o digwe  
(It is a muscular man)
- 2(b) Ke [monna] wa digwe  
(It is a muscular man)
  
- 3(a) Ke [monna] yo o dikgoka  
(It is a muscular man)
- 3(b) Ke [monna] wa dikgoka  
(It is a muscular man)

## 1.1.2 [Sefonthwana; setsompa, makiritlana] (Well-built and short)

- 4(a) It is a well-built and short man)
- 4(b) [Monna] wa sefonthwana/setsompa  
(It is a well-built and short man)
  
- 5(a) Ke [mosetsana] yo o makiritlana  
(It is a well-built and short girl)
- 5(b) Ke [mosetsana] wa makiritlana  
(It is a well-built and short girl)

## 1.1.3 [Popego] (Shapely)

- 6(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o popego  
(It is a woman with a shapely body)
- 6(b) Ke [mosadi] wa popego  
(It is a woman with a shapely body)

## 1.1.4 [Thata, senatla] (Strong)

- 7(a) Ke [mosimane] yo o thata  
(It is a strong boy)
- 7(b) Ke [mosimane] wa thata  
(It is a strong boy)

8. Ke [monna] yo o senatla  
(It is a strong man)

1.1.5 [Mokaloba] (Tall and strong)

9. Ke [monna] yo o mokaloba  
(It is a tall and strong man)

1.1.6 [Bolokwane] (Sturdy)

- 10(a) Ke [mosimane] yo o bolokwane  
(It is a sturdy boy)

- 10(b) Ke [mosimane] wa bolokwane  
(It is a sturdy boy)

1.1.7 [Bonyemeku] (Supple)

11. Ke [mosetsana] yo o bonyemeku  
(It is a supple girl)

1.1.8 [Bofefo] (Light-footed)

12. Ke [phologolo] e e bofefo  
(It is a light-footed animal)

1.1.9 [Botsogo; pholo] (Healthy)

- 13(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o botsogo  
(It is a healthy woman)

- 13(b) Ke [mosadi] wa botsogo  
(It is a healthy woman)

- 14(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o pholo  
(It is a healthy woman)

- 14(b) Ke [mosadi] wa pholo  
(It is a healthy woman)

1.1.10 [Boitekanelo] (Strong and healthy)

- 15(a) Ke [monna] yo o boitekanelo  
(It is a strong and healthy man)

- 15(b) Ke [monna] wa boitekanelo  
(It is a strong and healthy man)

1.1.11 [Phetakapejane, matlhagatlhaga] (Energetic)

16. Ke [mosetsana] yo o phetakapejane  
(It is an active, energetic girl)
- 17(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o matlhagatlhaga  
(It is an active, energetic woman)
- 17(b) Ke [mosadi] wa matlhagatlhaga  
(It is an active, energetic woman)

1.1.12 [Motsotsoropa, letlharapa] (Slender and tall)

18. Ke [mosetsane] yo o motsotsoropa  
(It is a tall and slender girl)
19. Ke [mosetsana] yo o letlharapa  
(It is a tall and slender girl)

**1.2 Bad shape of the body**

1.2.1 [Malolololo, mokogo, mararampha, masasapa, lewalala] (Emaciated)

20. Ke [nku] e e malolololo  
(It is an emaciated sheep)
21. Ke [kgomo] e e mokogo  
(It is an emaciated cow)
- 22(a) Ke [ntšwa] e e mararampha  
(It is an emaciated dog)
- 22(b) Ke [ntšwa] ya mararampha  
(It is an emaciated dog)
- 23(a) Ke [nku] e e masasapa  
(It is an emaciated sheep)
- 23(b) Ke [nku] ya masasapa  
(It is an emaciated sheep)
24. Ke [monna] yo o lewalala  
(It is an emaciated man)



**1.2.2 [Matsatsarapa] (Lean with thin legs)**

25(a) Ke [mosetsana] yo o matsatsarapa  
(It is a lean girl with thin legs)

25(b) Ke [mosetsana] wa matsatsarapa  
(It is a lean girl with thin legs)

**1.2.3 [Lekoro] (Stooped)**

26(a) Ke [monnamogolo] yo o legoro  
(It is a stooped old man)

26(b) Ke [monnamogolo] wa legoro  
(It is a stooped old man)

**1.2.4 [Serathane] Lean with protruding stomach**

27. Ke [ngwana] yo o serathane  
(It is a child with a protruding abdomen)

**1.2.5 [Leswafe] (Albino)**

28. Ke [ngwana] yo o leswafe  
(It is an albino child)

**1.2.6 [Matlabua] (Flabby)**

29. Ke [mosadi] yo o matlabua  
(It is a flabby woman)

**1.2.7 [Sebinita] (Stout)**

30. Ke [monna] yo o sebinita  
(It is a stout man)

**1.2.8 [Motlepere] (Useless and flabby)**

31. Ke [motho] yo o motlepere  
(It is a useless and flabby person)

**1.2.9 [Maphikophiko] (Corpulent and bulky)**

**32(a) Ke [motho] yo o maphikophiko**  
(It is a corpulent and bulky person)

**32(b) Ke [motho] wa maphikophiko**

**1.2.10 [Matlepetlepe] (Fat and clumsy)**

**33(a) Ke [mosimane] yo o matlepetlepe**  
(It is a fat and clumsy boy)

**33(b) Ke [mosimane] wa matlepetlepe**  
(It is a fat and clumsy boy)

**1.2.11 [Mafura] (Fat)**

**34(a) Ke [mmele] o o mafura**  
(It is a fat body)

**34(b) Ke [mmele] wa mafura**  
(It is a fat body)

**1.2.12 [Mareperepe] (Big and flabby)**

**35(a) Ke [mosimane] yo o mareperepe**  
(It is a big boy with flabby flesh)

**35(b) Ke [mosimane] wa mareperepe**  
(It is a big boy with flabby flesh)

**1.2.13 [Sekatana] (Very short)**

**36. Ke [monna] yo o sekatana**

**1.2.14 [Sebetwane] (Short and corpulent)**

**37. Ke [monna] yo o sebetwane**  
(It is a short and corpulent man)

**1.2.15 [Lemponempone] (Dwarf)**

**38. Ke [monna] yo o lemponempone**  
(It is a dwarfish man)

## 1.2.16 [Bokoa; bolepeledi] (Weak)

39(a) Ke [ngwana] yo o bokoa  
(It is a weak, sickly child)

39(b) Ke [ngwana] wa bokoa  
(It is a weak, sickly child)

40(a) Ke [monna] yo o bolepeledi  
(It is a weak man)

40(b) Ke [monna] wa bolepeledi

## 1.2.17 [Bolwetse] (Sick)

41(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o bolwetse  
(It is a sick woman)

41(b) Ke [mosadi] wa bolwetse  
(It is a sick woman)

## 1.2.18 [Sekgakgarua] (Decrepit)

42(a) Ke [monna] yo o sekgakgarua  
(It is a decrepit man)

## 1.2.19 [Serepa] (Comatose)

43 Ke [monna] yo o serepa  
(It is a comatose man)

## 1.2.20 Feeling in body:

## 1.2.20.1 [Botlhoko] (Pain)

44(a) Ke [ntho] e e botlhoko  
(It is a painful wound)

44(b) Ke [ntho] ya botlhoko  
(It is a painful wound)

## 1.2.20.2 [Boroko] (Drowsy)

45(a) Ke [ngwana] yo o boroko  
(It is a sleepy, drowsy child)

45(b) Ke [ngwana] wa boroko  
(It is a sleepy, drowsy child)

1.2.20.3 [Bosisi] (Numb)

46(a) Ke [letsogo] le le bosisi  
(It is a numb hand)

46(b) Ke [letsogo] la bosisi  
(It is a numb hand)

1.3 **Body Part**

1.3.1 Hair

1.3.1.1 Hairy [mariri, moriri]

47(a) Ke [monna] yo o mariri  
(It is a hairy man)

47(b) Ke [monna] wa mariri  
(It is a hairy man)

48(a) Ke [tlhogo] e e moriri  
(It is a hairy head)

48(b) Ke [tlhogo] ya moriri  
(It is a hairy head)

1.3.1.2 Unkempt hair [seriri]

49(a) Ke [seopedi] se se seriri  
(It is a singer with unkempt hair)

49(b) Ke [seopedi] sa seriri  
(It is a singer with unkempt hair)

1.3.1.3 Bald head [Lefatla]

50(a) Ke [monna] yo o lefatla  
(It is a bald man)

50(b) Ke [monna] wa lefatla  
(It is a bald man)

#### 1.3.1.4 Jagged hair [matlhofe, matsue]

51(a) Ke [moriri] o o matlhofe

(It is a jagged hair)

51(b) Ke [moriri] wa matlhofe

(It is a jagged hair)

52(a) Ke [moriri] o o matsue

(It is a jagged hair)

52(b) Ke [moriri] wa matsue

(It is a jagged hair)

#### 1.3.1.5 Bushy beard [sekgwa sa ditedu]

53(a) Ke [monna] yo o sekgwa sa ditedu

(It is a man with a bushy beard)

51(b) Ke [monna] wa sekgwa sa ditedu

(It is a man with bushy beard)

### 1.3.2 Head

#### 1.3.1.1 Large head [tlhogo-telele]

54(a) Ke [monna] yo o tlhogo-telele

(It is a large headed man)

54(b) Ke [monna] wa tlhogo-telele

(It is a large headed man)

#### 1.3.1.2 Large face [sefatlhego se setelele]

55(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o sefatlhego se setelele

(It is a large faced woman)

55(b) Ke [mosadi] wa sefatlhego se setelele

(It is a large faced woman)

#### 1.3.1.3 Broad chest [Nkgara]

56(a) Ke [mosimane] yo o nkgara

(It is a broad chested boy)

56(b) Ke [mosimane] wa nkgara

(It is a boy with a broad chest)

### 1.3.4 Eyes

#### 1.3.4.1 Sightless [mogapa]

57(a) Ke [leitlho] le le mogapa

(It is a sightless eye)

57(b) Ke [leitlho] la mogapa

(It is a sightless eye)

#### 1.3.4.2 Protruding [diroto]

58(a) Ke [matlho] a a diroto

(They are protruding eyes)

58(b) Ke [matlho] a diroto

(They are protruding eyes)

### 1.3.5 Protruding mouth [motopo]

59(a) Ke [molomo] o o motopo

(It is a protruding mouth)

59(b) Ke [molomo] wa motopo

(It is a protruding mouth)

### 1.3.6 Waist: [matheneke] (Narrow-waisted)

60(a) Ke [mosetsana] yo o matheneke

(It is a narrow-waisted girl)

60(b) Ke [mosetsana] wa matheneke

(It is a narrow-waisted girl)

### 1.3.7 Stomach: [lebotsana] (Pot belly)

61(a) Ke [monna] yo o lebotsane

(It is a pot-bellied man)

61(b) Ke [monna] wa lebotsane

(It is a pot-bellied man)

### 1.3.8 Jaw: [mangang] (Bulgy-jowled)

62(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o mangana

(It is a bulgy-jowled woman)

62(b) Ke [mosadi] wa mangana  
(It is a bulgy-jowled woman)

### 1.3.9 Shoulders: [marota] (Round shoulders)

63(a) Ke [monna] yo o marota  
(It is a round shouldered man)

63(b) Ke [monna] wa marota  
(It is a round shouldered man)

### 1.3.10 Legs

#### 1.3.10.1 Bowlegs [digoro]

64(a) Ke [maoto] a a digoro  
(They are bowlegged legs)

64(b) Ke [maoto] a digoro  
(They are bowlegged legs)

#### 1.3.10.2 Short legs [dikgonkgojane]

65(a) Ke [maoto] a a dikgonkgojane  
(They are short legs)

65(b) Ke [maoto] a dikgonkgojane  
(They are short legs)

### 1.3.11 Hand

#### 1.3.11.1 Left-handed, asymmetric [molema]

66(a) Ke [ngwana] yo o molema  
(It is a left-handed child)

67(a) Ke [lenaka] le le molema  
(It is an asymmetric horn)

67(b) Ke [lenaka] la molema  
(It is an asymmetric horn)

### 1.3.11.2 Right hand [moja]

68(a) Ke [seatla] se se moja

(It is a right hand)

68(a) Ke [seatla] sa moja

(It is a right hand)

### 1.3.12 Voice

#### 1.3.12.1 Hoarseness [magweregwere]

69(a) Ke [lentswe] le le magweregwere

(It is a hoarse voice)

69(b) Ke [lentswe] la magweregwere

(It is a hoarse voice)

(magogoša) (hoarse)

70(a) Ke [lentswe] le le magogoša

(It is a hoarse voice)

70(b) Ke [lentswe] la magogoša

(It is a hoarse voice)

#### 1.3.12.2 Stammer [bokokoretsi]

71(a) Ke [ngwana] yo o bokokoretsi

(It is a stammering child)

71(b) Ke [ngwana] wa bokokoretsi

(It is a stammering child)

### 1.3.13 Body Naked [mašampa]

72(a) Ke [ngwana] yo o mašampa

(It is a naked child)

72(b) Ke [ngwana] wa mašampa

(It is a naked child)

(naked) [lepono]

73(a) Ke [ngwana] yo o lepono

(It is a naked child)

73(b) Ke [ngwana] wa lepono

(It is a naked child)



(naked) [bogwete]

74(a) Ke [tlhogo] e e bogwete  
(It is a naked head)

74(b) Ke [tlhogo] ya bogwete  
(It is a naked head)

(naked) [bogonoko]

75(a) Ke [mmele] o o bogonoko  
(It is a naked body)

75(b) Ke [mmele] wa bogonoko  
(It is a naked body)

### 1.3.14 Skin

Scaly; rough [makwapa]

76(a) Ke [letlalo] le le makwapa  
(It is a scaly, rough skin)

76(b) Ke [letlalo] la makwapa  
(It is a scaly, rough skin)

### 1.3.15 Pregnancy

1.3.15.1 Pregnant person [merwalo]

77(a) Ke [mosetsana] yo o merwalo  
(It is a pregnant girl)

77(b) Ke [mosetsana] wa merwalo  
(It is a pregnant girl)

1.3.15.2 In calf [morotooteng]

78(a) Ke [kgomo] e e morotooteng  
(It is a cow in calf)

78(b) Ke [kgomo] ya morotooteng  
(It is a cow in calf)

(gravid) [nemeru]

79(a) Ke [kgomo] e e nemeru  
(It is a gravid cow)

79(b) Ke [kgomo] ya nemeru  
(It is a gravid cow)

#### 1.4 Physical disadvantaged

##### 1.4.1 Deaf [bosusu, susu]

80 Ke [monna] yo o susu  
(It is a deaf man)

81(a) Ke [dintšwa] tse di bosusu  
(They are deaf dogs)

81(b) Ke [dintšwa] tsa bosusu  
(They are deaf dogs)

##### 1.4.2 Deaf and dumb [segwana]

82 Ke [monna] yo o segwana  
(It is a deaf and dumb man)

##### 1.4.3 Disabled [sekoka]

83 Ke [monna] yo o sekoka  
(It is a disabled man)

##### 1.4.4 Crippled [segole; botlhotsi]

84 Ke [monna] yo o segole  
(It is a crippled man)

85(a) Ke [monna] yo o botlhotsi  
(It is a crippled man)

85(b) Ke [monna] wa botlhotsi  
(It is a crippled man)

##### 1.4.5 Blind [sefofu]

86 Ke [monna] yo o sefofu  
(It is a blind man)

## 2. QUALITY

### 2.1 Quality of temperature

#### 2.1.1. Hot

##### 2.1.1.1 Warm [bolelo; bothitho]

- (a) Ke [letsatsi] le le bolelo  
(It is a hot sun)
- (b) Ke [mašwi] a a bothitho  
(It is a warm milk)

##### 2.1.1.2 Lukewarm [motlha]

- (c) Ke [metsi] a a motlha  
(It is a lukewarm water)

#### 2.1.2 Cold [tsididi]

- (d) Ke [metsi] a a tsididi  
(It is a cold water)

### 2.2 Quality of wetness

#### 2.2.1. Wet [metsi]

- 1(a) Ke [tlhaga] e e metsi  
(It is a wet grass)
- 1(b) Ke [tlhaga] ya metsi  
(It is a wet grass)

#### 2.2.2. Damp and moist [seola]

- 2(a) Ke [mmu] o o seola  
(It is a damp and moist soil)
- 2(b) Ke [mmu] wa seola  
(It is a damp and moist soil)

#### 2.2.3. Misty [letobo]

- 3(a) Ke [loapi] lo lo letobo  
(It is a misty sky)
- 3(b) Ke [loapi] la letobo  
(It is a misty sky)

## 2.3 Quality of cleanliness

### 2.3.1 Clean [phepa]

- 1(a) Ke [diaparo] tse di phepa  
(They are clean clothes)

### 2.3.2 Pure [tthololo]

- 2(a) Ke [gouta] e e tthololo  
(They is pure gold)
- 2(b) Ke [gouta] ya tthololo  
(It is pure gold)

### 2.3.3 Dirty [makgapila; leswe]

- 3(a) Ke [lapa] le le makgapila  
(It is a dirty place)
- 3(b) Ke [lapa] la makgapila  
(It is a dirty place)
- 4(a) Ke [ngwana] yo o leswe  
(It is a dirty child)
- 4(b) Ke [ngwana] wa leswe  
(It is a dirty child)

## 2.4 Quality of instruments

### 2.4.1 Sharp [bogale]

- 1(a) Ke [thipa] e e bogale  
(It is a sharp knife)
- 1(b) Ke [thipa] ya bogale  
(It is a sharp knife)

### 2.4.2 Blunt [borethe]

- 2(a) Ke [thipa] e e borethe  
(It is a blunt knife)
- 2(b) Ke [thipa ] ya borethe  
(It is a blunt knife)

## 2.5 Quality of soil

### 2.5.1 Sandy [motlhaba]

- 1(a) Ke [tsela] e e motlhaba  
(It is a sandy road)
- 1(b) Ke [tsela] ya motlhaba  
(It is a sandy road)

### 2.5.2 Stony [matlapa]

- 2(a) Ke [tsela] e e matlapa  
(It is a stony road)
- 2(b) Ke [tsela] ya matlapa  
(It is a stony road)

### 2.5.3 Loose [masasapa]

- 3(a) Ke [mmu] o o masasapa  
(It is loose soil)
- 3(b) Ke [mmu] wa masasapa  
(It is loose soil)

## 2.6 Quality of road

### 2.6.1 Straight [motwenene]

- 4(a) Ke [tsela] e e motwenene  
(It is a dead straight road)
- 4(b) Ke [tsela] e e motwenene  
(It is a dead straight road)

### 2.6.2 Winding [manyokenyoke; matswakabele]

- 5(a) Ke [tsela] e e manyokenyoke  
(It is a winding road)
- 5(b) Ke [tsela] ya manyokenyoke  
(It is a winding road)
  
- 6(a) Ke [tsela] e e matswakabele  
(It is a winding road)

- 6(b) Ke [tsela] ya matswakabele  
(It is a winding road)

### 2.6.3 Curved [segogoropo]

- 7(a) Ke [tsela] e e segogoropo  
(It is a curved road)
- 7(b) Ke [tsela] ya segogoropo  
(It is a curved road)

### 2.6.4 Twisting [matshopetshope]

- 8(a) Ke [tsela] e e matshopetshope  
(It is a twisting, curly road)
- 8(b) Ke [tsela] ya matshopetshope  
(It is a twisting, curly road)

### 2.6.5 Uneven [makgawekgawe]

- 9(a) Ke [tsela] e e makgawekgawe  
(It is an uneven road)
- 9(b) Ke [tsela] ya makgawekgawe  
(It is an uneven road)

## 2.7 **Quality of place**

### 2.7.1 Low-lying area [moitiga]

- 10(a) Ke [lefatshe] le le moitiga  
(It is a low-lying area)
- 10(b) Ke [lefatshe] la moitiga  
(It is a low-lying area)

### 2.7.2 Knobby [makukunopu]

- 11(a) Ke [lelapa] le le makukunopu  
(It is a knobby place)
- 11(b) Ke [lelapa] la makukunopu  
(It is a knobby place)

## 2.8 Quality of object

### 2.8.1 Flat and thin [patsana]

12(a) Ke [letlapa] le le patsana  
(It is a flat and thin stone)

12(b) Ke [letlapa] la patsana  
(It is a flat and thin stone)

### 2.8.2 Smooth [borethe]

13(a) Ke [letlalo] le le borethe  
(It is a smooth skin)

13(b) Ke [letlalo] la borethe  
(It is a smooth skin)

### 2.8.3 Comfortable [manobonobo]

14(a) Ke [setilo] se se manobonobo  
(It is a comfortable chair)

14(b) Ke [setilo] sa manobonobo  
(It is a comfortable chair)

### 2.8.4 Pleasant [mankoko]

15(a) Ke [sejanaga] se se mankoko  
(It is a pleasant car)

15(b) Ke [sejanaga] sa mankoko  
(It is a pleasant car)

### 2.8.5 Loose [bolea; malabeswa]

16(a) Ke [mogala] o o bolea  
(It is a loose rope)

16(b) Ke [mogala] wa bolea  
(It is a loose rope)

17(a) Ke [kgole] e e malebeswa  
(It is a loose rope)

17(b) Ke [kgole] ya malebeswa  
(It is a loose rope)

## 2.9 Quality of food

### 2.9.1 Taste

#### 2.9.1.1 Delicious [monate]

- 18(a) Ke [dijo] tse di monate  
(It is a nice food)

#### 2.9.1.2 Sour [botlha]

- 19(a) Ke [mašwi] a a botlha  
(It is a sour milk)
- 19(b) Ke [mašwi] a botlha  
(It is a sour milk)

#### 2.9.1.3 Rancid [legou]

- 20(a) Ke [dijo] tse di legou  
(It is a rancid food)
- 20(b) Ke [dijo] tsa legou  
(It is a rancid food)

#### 2.9.1.4 Insipid [setsurutsuru]

- 21(a) Ke [dijo] tse di setsurutsuru  
(They are insipid food)
- 21(b) Ke [dijo] tsa setsurutsuru  
(They are insipid food)

#### 2.9.1.5 Tasteless [setlasu, bosula]

- 22(a) Ke [bojalwa] bo bo setlasu  
(It is a tasteless beer)
- 22(b) Ke [bojalwa] ba setlasu  
(It is a tasteless beer)
- 23(a) Ke [dijo] tse di bosula  
(They are tasteless food)
- 23(b) Ke [dijo] tsa bosula  
(It is a tasteless food)



### 2.9.1.6 Half-cooked [maphola]

- 24(a) Ke [dikgobe] tse di maphola  
(They are half-cooked beans)
- 24(b) Ke [dikgobe] tsa maphola  
(They are half-cooked beans)

### 2.9.1.7 Salty [letswai]

- 25(a) Ke [dijo] tse di letswai  
(They are salty food)
- 25(b) Ke [dijo] tsa letswai  
(They are salty food)

## 2.9.2 Tender food

### 2.9.2.1 Tender [boruma]

- 26(a) Ke [nama] e e boruma  
(It is a tender meat)
- 26(b) Ke [nama] ya boruma  
(It is a tender meat)

### 2.9.2.2 Young and tender [boremekwane]

- 27(a) Ke [morogo] o o boremekwane  
(It is a young and tender vegetable)
- 27(b) Ke [morogo] wa boremekwane  
(It is a young and tender vegetable)

## 2.9.3 Pulpy food

### 2.9.3.1 Slushy [lephere]

- 28(a) Ke [dijo] tse di lephere  
(They are slushy food)
- 28(b) Ke [dijo] tsa lephere  
(They are slushy food)

### 2.9.3.2 Mushy [lerepa]

- 29(a) Ke [moro] o o lerepa  
(It is a mushy gravy)

- 29(b) Ke [moro] wa lerepa  
(It is a mushy gravy)

#### 2.9.4 Stiff food

##### 2.9.4.1 Stiff [kwetlepa]

- 30(a) Ke [dijo] tse di kwetlepa  
(They are stiff food)
- 30(b) Ke [dijo] tsa kwetlepa  
(They are stiff food)

##### 2.9.4.2 Thick and stiff [tshume]

- 31(a) Ke [bogobe] bo bo tshume  
(It is a thick, stiff porridge)
- 31(b) Ke [bogobe] ba tshume  
(It is a thick, stiff porridge)

##### 2.9.4.3 Gelatinous [marere]

- 32(a) Ke [moro] o o marere  
(It is a gelatinous gravy)
- 32(b) Ke [moro] wa marere  
(It is a gelatinous gravy)

#### 2.9.5 Unripe food [mogodiri]

- 33(a) Ke [mabele] a a mogodiri  
(They are green, unripe sorghum)
- 33(b) Ke [mabele] a mogodiri  
(They are green, unripe sorghum)

#### 2.10 **Quality of texture**

##### 2.10.1 Hard [letlapa, thata, logwadi, popota]

- 1(a) Ke [metsi] a a letlapa  
(It is a hard water)
- 1(b) Ke [metsi] a letlapa  
(It is a hard water)

2(a) Ke [logong] lo lo thata

(It is a hard wood)

2(b) Ke [logong] la thata

(It is a hard wood)

3(a) Ke [letlalo] le le logwadi

(It is a hard skin)

3(b) Ke [letlalo] la logwadi

(It is a hard skin)

4(a) Ke [logong] lo lo popota

(It is a hard wood)

4(b) Ke [logong] la popota

(It is a hard wood)

#### 2.10.2 Soft [botobetobe; manyeme, boleta; botsatsa]

5(a) Ke [leungo] le le botobetobe

(It is a soft fruit)

5(b) Ke [leungo] la botobetobe

(It is a soft fruit)

6(a) Ke [namune] e e manyeme

(It is a soft orange)

6(b) Ke [namune] ya manyeme

(It is a soft orange)

7(a) Ke [letsogo] le le boleta

(It is a soft hand)

7(b) Ke [letsogo] la boleta

(It is a soft hand)

8(a) Ke [mosese] o o botsatsa

(It is a soft and flimsy dress)

8(b) Ke [mosese] wa botsatsa

(It is a soft and flimsy dress)

### 2.10.3 Light [botlhofo]

- 9(a) Ke [merwalo] e e botlhofo  
(They are light goods)
- 9(b) Ke [merwalo] ya botlhofo  
(They are light goods)

### 2.10.4 Coarse [matlhaswa; manasa; magelejwa]

- 10 Ke [boupi] bo bo matlhaswa  
(It is a coarse meal)
- 11(a) Ke [boupi] bo bo manasa  
(It is a coarse meal)
- 11(b) Ke [boupi] ba manasa  
(It is a coarse meal)
- 12(a) Ke [mmu] o o magalejwa  
(It is a coarse soil)
- 12(b) Ke [mmu] wa magalejwa  
(It is a coarse soil)

## 2.11 **Quality of hue**

The term hue refers to the degree of brightness in a colour.

### 2.11.1 Dark [lefifi]

- 13(a) Ke [sekgwa] se se lefifi  
(It is a dark forest)
- 13(b) Ke [sekgwa] sa lefifi  
(It is a dark forest)

### 2.11.2 Faint [bofitlha]

- 14(a) Ke [mmala] o o bofitlha  
(It is a faint colour)
- 14(b) Ke [mmala] wa bofitlha  
(It is a faint colour)

**Spotted:****2.11.3 Speckled [marabaraba]**

15(a) Ke [kgogo] e e marabaraba

(It is a speckled hen)

15(b) Ke [kgogo] ya marabaraba

(It is a speckled hen)

16(a) Ke [pietse] e e marabantha

(It is a dappled horse)

16(b) Ke [pitse] ya marabantha

(It is a dappled horse)

17(a) Ke [mmala] o o matabalaka

(It is a spotted colour)

17(b) Ke [mmala] wa matabalaka

(It is a spotted colour)

**2.11.4 Multi-coloured [magabagakwe]**

18(a) Ke [lesela] le le magabagakwe

(It is a multi-coloured cloth)

18(b) Ke [lesela] la magabagakwe

(It is a multi-coloured cloth)

**6.8 HUMAN CHARACTERISTICS**

The stems below refer to features of people which are special and easily recognised as a quality of a person. Such features may be grouped into various sub-categories of which a summarised list is given below:

**1. Good Characteristics**

1.1 Kind-hearted [pelo, pelontle; pelonolo, pelonomi, pelotshweu, bokgwafo]

1.2 Warm [bothito]

1.3 Sympathetic [pelotlhomogi, boutlwelobotlhoko]

1.4 Level-headed [legoso] (no possessive, person)

1.5 Attentive [kelotlhoko]

1.6 Faithful, reliable [boikanyego]

- 1.7 Accessible [bosapelo]
- 1.8 Pure; faultless [phega] (no possessive, no noun)
- 1.9 Friendly [botsalano]
- 1.10 Righteous [mosiami] (no possessive, person)
- 1.11 Good [molemo]
- 1.12 Conservative [mosomaredi; senganga] (no possessive, person)
- 1.13 Jokeful [botshegisi, metlae]
- 1.14 Jovial [lethabo]
- 1.15 Helpful [bothusi]
- 1.16 Thrifty [mosomaredi] (no possessive; person)
- 1.17 Patient [boitshoko, pelotelele]
- 1.18 Happy [boitumelo]
- 1.19 Joyful [boipelo]
- 1.20 Lucky [tshego]
- 1.21 Emotional [maikutlo]
- 1.22 Proud [makoko, mabela]
- 1.23 Haughty [moikgantshi; boikgogomosi] (no possessive, person)
- 1.24 Active [majato]
- 1.25 Diligent [manontlhotlho]
- 1.26 Enthusiastic [mafolofolo]
- 1.27 Brave [bogale, sebeta, pelokgale, senatla] (no possessive, person)
- 1.28 Ambitious [maikaelelo]

## **2. Bad Characteristics**

- 2.1 Cruel [pelompe, setlhogo]
- 2.2 Aggressive [bodipa]
- 2.3 Rude [mafega]
- 2.4 Argumentative [manganga]
- 2.5 Bad-tempered [bosilo]
- 2.6 Merciless [swele]
- 2.7 Heartless [peloethata]
- 2.8 Quarrelsome [borumolani]
- 2.9 Violent [morusu]
- 2.10 Hateful [kilo, letlhoo]
- 2.11 Despicable [mokola] (no possessive, person)

- 2.12 Evil [bosula]
- 2.13 Rog [bolotlhanyi]
- 2.14 Cunning [botsietsi]  
[leferefere, leoma, letadimakwana, letsipa] (no possessives, persons)
- 2.15 Thievish [legodu, lenweenwee] (no possessives, persons)
- 2.16 Obstinate [kgopo]
- 2.17 Immature [tala]
- 2.18 Good-for-nothing [kobaswe] (no possessive, person)
- 2.19 Greedy [megagaru, pelotshetlha]  
[mofula] (no possessive, person)
- 2.20 Gluttonous [legodu] (no possessive, person)
- 2.21 Troublesome [letshwenyo, leferetlho]
- 2.22 Sly [mathaitai]
- 2.23 Cowardly [boi]
- 2.24 Deceitful [legwaragwara, lenweenwee] (no possessives, person)
- 2.25 Despondent [mongalo] (no possessive, person)
- 2.26 Overhasty [magalamasuge, mafega, matlhajana, pelwana, ntwadumela]  
[sebetwane] (no possessive, person)
- 2.27 Talkative [bobalabadi]
- 2.28 Careless [letlhaswa, lesutlha, nkwatle, matlhaswa] (no possessives, person)
- 2.29 Irritating [matepe]
- 2.30 Demanding [mosuga] (no possessive, person)
- 2.31 Officious [bolaodi]
- 2.32 Elusive [marelelekwane]
- 2.33 Self-willed [boitaolo]  
[segagapa] (no possessive, person)
- 2.34 Spendthrift [lesutlha] (no possessive, person)
- 2.35 Stubborn [logwadi, seteenene]
- 2.36 Impudent [makgakga, bodipa]
- 2.37 Abusive [nkane]
- 2.38 Lying [maaka]
- 2.39 Jealous [lefufa]

### 3. **Bad Habits**

- 3.1 Lazy [botswa]  
[setshwakga, sebedu, motlapa] (no possessives, persons)
- 3.2 Drunk [botagwa, botlhapelwa]
- 3.3 Sinful [moleofi] (no possessive, person)
- 3.4 Vagabond [bokgarakgatshegi] [malaomabe] (no possessive, person)
- 3.5 Dirty [sekgakga] (no possessive, person)
- 3.6 Untidy [leswe] [lesutlha] (no possessive, person)

### 4. **Timid Characteristics**

- 4.1 Lonely [bodutu]
- 4.2 Tearful [sebeto] (no possessive, person)
- 4.3 Listless [mongodi]
- 4.4 Clumsy [setshomatshoma, setshururu] (no possessives, person)
- 4.5 Gentle [bonolo]
- 4.6 Timid [boi]
- 4.7 Vacillating [bofetogi]
- 4.8 Useless [botlakala] [motlepere, sebedu] (no possessives, person)
- 4.9 Feeble [botswafi]
- 4.10 Wretched [mmotlana] (no possessive, person)

### 5. **Intelligence**

- 5.1 Intelligent [tlhogo, botlhale] [matlhabathakane] (no possessive, person)
- 5.2 Resolute [bosweetsi, boatlhodi]
- 5.3 Bright and alert [boitseanape] [motlhalefi] (no possessive, person)

### 6. **Retarded**

- 6.1 Stupid [setshomatshoma, lesilo, setlaela] (no possessives, person)



- 6.2 Dull and stupid [boruthwe] [sekopa] (no possessive, person)
- 6.3 Mad [botlhakana-tlhogo]
- 6.4 Ignorant and empty-headed [botlhoka-kitso]
- 6.5 Foolish [boapu] [seramatla, setlatla] (no possessives, persons)
- 6.6 Foolish and stupid [sematla, semaumau, seramuramu, seleele, senene] (no possessives, person)
- 6.7 Naïve and foolish [segamugamu, setlamutlamu] (no possessives, person)

## 7. Skills

- 7.1 Skilful [bokgoni; sethakga, mokatisi] (no possessives, person)
- 7.2 Experienced [matsetseleko, maitemogelo]
- 7.3 Able [kgagapa; segwaba] (no possessives, person)
- 7.4 Dexterous [sethakga] (no possessive, person)
- 7.5 Orator [kgeleke] (no possessive, person)
- 7.6 Handy [mabogodika]
- 7.7 Artistic [setswerere] (no possessive, person)

## 8. Wealth

- 8.1 Rich [sekgorane, mohumi, mokgoni] (no possessives, person)
- 8.2 Poor [botlhoki, bokopi, modidi] (no possessive, person)

The stems which have been identified above will be used in example phrases below, as in the other cases above; the subcategories above also indicated those stems which do not accept a descriptive possessive. The examples below will thus have no reference in such stems to a descriptive possessive:

### 1. Good Characteristics:

- 1.1 Kind-hearted [pelo, peloentle, pelonolo, pelonomi, pelotshweu]
  - 1(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o pelonomi  
(It is a kind woman)
  - 1(b) Ke [mosadi] wa pelonomi  
(It is a kind woman)

[bokgwafo]:

- 2(a) Ke [monna] yo o bokgwafo

(It is a kind man)

- 2(b) Ke [monna] wa bokgwafo  
(It is a kind man)

1.2 Warm [bothitho]

- 3(a) O na le pelo e e bothitho  
(He has a warm heart)
- 3(b) O na le pelo ya bothitho  
(He has a warm heart)

1.3 Sympathetic [pelotlhomogi; boutlwelobotlhoko]

- 4(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o pelotlhomogi  
(It is a sympathetic woman)
- 4(b) Ke [mosadi] wa pelotlhomogi  
(It is a sympathetic woman)
- 5(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o boutlwelobotlhoko  
(It is a merciful woman)
- 5(b) Ke [mosadi] wa boutlwelobotlhoko  
(It is a merciful woman)

1.4 Level-headed [legoso]

6. Ke [monna] yo o legoso  
(It is a level-headed man)

1.5 Attentive [kelotlhoko]

- 7(a) Ke [ngwana] yo o kelotlhoko  
(It is an attentive child)
- 7(b) Ke [ngwana] wa kelotlhoko  
(It is an attentive child)

- 1.6 Faithful, reliable [boikanyego]
- 8(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o boikanyego  
(It is a faithful, reliable woman)
- 8(b) Ke [mosadi] wa boikanyego  
(It is a faithful, reliable woman)
- 1.7 Accessible [bosapelo]
- 9(a) Ke [monna] yo o bosapelo  
(It is an accessible man)
- 9(b) Ke [monna] wa bosapelo  
(It is an accessible man)
- 1.8 Pure; faultless [phepa]
10. Ke [mosetsana] yo o phepa  
(It is a pure, faultless girl)
- 1.9 Friendly [botsalano]
- 11(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o botsalano  
(It is a friendly woman)
- 11(b) Ke [mosadi] wa botsalano  
(It is a friendly woman)
- 1.10 Righteous [mosiami]
12. Ke [mosadi] yo o mosiami  
(It is a good woman)
- 1.11 Good [molemo]
- 13(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o molemo  
(It is a good woman)
- 13(b) Ke [mosadi] wa molemo  
(It is a good woman)
- 1.12 Conservative [mosomaredi; senganga]
14. Ke [monna] yo o mosomaredi  
(It is a conservative man)

15. Ke [mosadi] yo o senganga  
(It is a conservative woman)

1.13 Jokeful [botshegisi, metlae]

16(a) Ke [monna] yo o botshegisi  
(It is a jokeful man)

16(b) Ke [monna] wa botshegisi  
(It is a jokeful man)

17(a) Ke [monna] yo o metlae  
(It is a jokeful man)

17(b) Ke [monna] wa metlae  
(It is a jokeful man)

1.14 Jovial [lethabo]

18(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o lethabo  
(It is a jovial woman)

18(b) Ke [mosadi] wa lethabo  
(It is a jovial woman)

1.15 Helpful [bothusi]

19(a) Ke [monna] yo o bothusi  
(It is a helpful man)

19(b) Ke [monna] wa bothusi  
(It is a helpful man)

1.16 Thrifty [mosomaredi]

20 Ke [mosadi] yo o mosomaredi  
(It is a thrifty woman)

(See also par. 1.12, no (14))

1.17 Patient [boitshoko, pelotelele]

21(a) Ke [monna] yo o boitshoko  
(It is a patient man)

21(b) Ke [monna] wa boitshoko  
(It is a patient man)

22(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o pelotelele  
(It is a patient woman)

22(b) Ke [mosadi] wa pelotelele  
(It is a patient woman)

1.18 Happy [boitumelo]

23(a) Ke [monna] yo o boitumelo  
(It is a happy man)

23(b) Ke [monna] wa boitumelo  
(It is a happy man)

1.19 Joyful [ boipelo]

24(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o boipelo  
(It is a joyful woman)

24(b) Ke [monna] wa boipelo  
(It is a joyful woman)

1.20 Lucky [ tshego]

25(a) Ke [mosetsana] yo o tshego  
(It is a lucky and fortunate girl)

25(b) Ke [mosetsana] wa tshego  
(It is a lucky and fortunate girl)

1.21 Emotional [maikutlo]

26(a) Ke [monna] yo o maikutlo  
(It is an emotional man)

26(b) Ke [monna] wa maikutlo  
(It is an emotional man)

- 1.22 Proud [makoko, mabela]
- 27(a) Ke [monna] yo o makoko  
(It is a proud man)
- 27(b) Ke [monna] wa makoko  
(It is a proud man)
- 28(a) Ke [motho] yo o mabela  
(It is a proud person)
- 28(b) Ke [motho] wa mabela  
(It is a proud person)
- 1.23 Haughty [moikgantshi, boikgogomosi]
29. Ke [mosadi] yo o moikgantshi  
(It is a haughty woman)
- 30(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o boikgogomosi  
(It is a haughty woman)
- 30(b) Ke [mosadi] wa boikgogomosi  
(It is a haughty woman)
- 1.24 Active [majato]
- 31(a) Ke [monna] yo o majato  
(It is an active and energetic man)
- 31(b) Ke [monna] wa majato  
(It is an active and energetic man)
- 1.25 Diligent [manontlhotlho]
- 32(a) Ke [mosimane] yo o manontlhotlho  
(It is a diligent boy)
- 32(b) Ke [mosimane] wa manontlhotlho  
(It is a diligent boy)
- 1.26 Enthusiastic [mafolofolo]
- 33(a) Ke [monna] yo o mafolofolo  
(It is an enthusiastic man)

33(b) Ke [monna] wa mafolofolo  
(It is an enthusiastic man)

1.27 Brave [senatla, bogale, sebeta, pelokgale]

34. Ke [monna] yo o senatla  
(It is a brave man)

35(a) Ke [monna] yo o bogale  
(It is a brave man)

35(b) Ke [monna] wa bogale  
(It is a brave man)

36(a) Ke [monna] yo o sebeta  
(It is a brave man)

36(b) Ke [monna] wa sebeta  
(It is a brave man)

37(a) Ke [monna] wa pelokgale  
(It is a brave man)

1.28 Ambitious [maikaelelo]

38(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o maikaelelo  
(It is an ambitious woman)

38(b) Ke [mosadi] wa maikaelelo  
(It is an ambitious woman)

**2. Bad Characteristics**

2.1 Cruel [pelompe, setlhogo]

1(a) Ke [monna] yo o pelompe  
(It is a cruel man)

1(b) Ke [monna] wa pelompe  
(It is a cruel man)

2(a) Ke [monna] yo o setlhogo  
(It is a cruel man)

2(b) Ke [monna] wa setlhogo  
(It is a cruel man)

## 2.2 Aggressive [bodlpa]

3(a) Ke [monna] yo o bodlpa  
(It is an aggressive man)

3(b) Ke [monna] wa bodlpa  
(It is an aggressive man)

## 2.3 Rude [mafega]

4(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o mafega  
(It is a rude woman)

4(b) Ke [mosadi] wa mafega  
(It is a rude woman)

## 2.4 Argumentative [manganga]

5(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o manganga  
(It is an argumentative woman)

5(b) Ke [mosadi] wa manganga  
(It is an argumentative woman)

## 2.5 Bad-tempered [bosilo]

6(a) Ke [monna] yo o bosilo  
(It is a bad-tempered man)

6(b) Ke [monna] wa bosilo  
(It is a bad-tempered man)

## 2.6 Merciless [swele]

7(a) Ke [kgosi] e e swele  
(It is a merciless king)

7(b) Ke [kgosi] ya swele  
(It is a merciless king)



- 2.7 Heartless [pelo-e-thata]
- 8(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o peloethata  
(It is a heartless woman)
- 8(b) Ke [mosadi] wa peloethata  
(It is a heartless woman)
- 2.8 Quarrelsome [borumolani]
- 9(a) Ke [mosimane] yo o borumolani  
(It is a quarrelsome boy)
- 9(b) Ke [mosimane] wa borumolani  
(It is a quarrelsome boy)
- 2.9 Violent [morusu]
- 10(a) Ke [monna] yo o morusu  
(It is a violent man)
- 10(b) Ke [monna] wa morusu  
(It is a violent man)
- 2.10 Hateful [kilo, letlhoo]
- 11(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o kilo  
(It is a hateful woman)
- 11(b) Ke [mosadi] wa kilo  
(It is a hateful woman)
- 12(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o letlhoo  
(It is a hateful woman)
- 12(b) Ke [mosadi] wa letlhoo  
(It is a hateful woman)
- 2.11 Despicable [mokola]
13. Ke [mosetsana] yo o mokola  
(It is a despisable girl)

## 2.12 Evil [bosula]

14(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o bosula

(It is an evil woman)

14(b) Ke [mosadi] wa bosula

(It is an evil woman)

## 2.13 Roguish [bolotlhanyi]

15(a) Ke [monna] yo o bolotlhanyi

(It is a roguish man)

15(b) Ke [monna] wa bolotlhanyi

(It is a roguish man)

## 2.14 Cunning [leferere, leoma, ketadimakwana, letsipa, botsietsi]

16. Ke [motho] yo o leferere

(It is a cunning person)

17. Ke [monna] yo o leoma

(It is a cunning man)

18. Ke [motho] yo o letadimakwana

(It is a cunning person)

19. Ke [legodu] le le letsipa

(It is a cunning thief)

20(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o botsietsi

(It is a cunning woman)

20(b) Ke [mosadi] wa botsietsi

(It is a cunning woman)

## 2.15 Thievish [legodu; lenweenwee]

21. Ke [mosimane] yo o legodu

(It is a thievish boy)

21. Ke [mosimane] yo o legodu  
(It is a thievish man)
- 2.16 Obstinate [kgopo]
- 23(a) Ke [ngwana] yo o kgopo  
(It is an obstinate child)
- 23(b) Ke [ngwana] wa kgopo  
(It is an obstinate child)
- 2.17 Immature [tala]
- 24(a) Ke [mosimane] yo o tala  
(It is an immature, uncouth boy)
- 24(b) Ke [mosimane] yo tala  
(It is an immature, uncouth boy)
- 2.18 Good-for-nothing [kobaswe]
25. Ke [mosetsana] yo o kobaswe  
(It is a good-for-nothing girl)
- 2.19 Greedy [megagaru, pelotshetlha, mofula]
- 26(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o megagaru  
(It is a greedy woman)
- 26(b) Ke [mosadi] wa megagaru  
(It is a greedy woman)
- 27(a) Ke [monna] yo o pelotshetlha  
(It is a greedy man)
- 27(b) Ke [monna] wa megagaru  
(It is a greedy man)
- 28(a) Ke [monna] yo o mofula  
(It is an avaricious man)

- 2.20 Gluttonous [legodu]  
29. Ke [mosadi] yo o legodu  
(It is a gluttonous, stingy man)
- 2.21 Troublesome [letshwenyo, leferetlho]  
30(a) Ke [monna] yo o letshwenyo  
(It is a troublesome man)  
30(b) Ke [monna] wa letshwenyo  
(It is a troublesome man)
- 31(a) Ke [mosimane] yo o leferetlho  
(It is a troublesome boy)  
31(b) Ke [mosimane] wa leferetlho  
(It is a troublesome boy)
- 2.22 Sly [mathaithai]  
32(a) Ke [monna] yo o mathaithai  
(It is a tricky, sly man)  
32(b) Ke [monna] wa mathaithai  
(It is a tricky, sly man)
- 2.23 Cowardly [boi]  
33(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o boi  
(It is a cowardly woman)  
33(b) Ke [mosadi] wa boi  
(It is a cowardly woman)
- 2.24 Deceitful [legwaragwara, lenweenwee]  
34. Ke [mosadi] yo o legwaragwara  
(It is a deceitful woman)
35. Ke [ngwana] yo o lenweenwee  
(It is a deceitful child)

## 2.25 Despondent [mongalo]

36. Ke [mosetsana] yo o mongalo  
(It is a despondent girl)

## 2.26 Overhasty [magalamasuge; mafega, matlhajana, sebetwane, pelwana, ntwadumela]

- 37(a) Ke [monna] yo o magalamasuge  
(It is an overhasty man)

- 37(a) Ke [monna] wa magalamasuge  
(It is an overhasty man)

- 38(a) Ke [monna] yo o mafega  
(It is an overhasty, rude man)

- 38(b) Ke [monna] wa mafega  
(It is an overhasty, rude man)

39. Ke [mosadi] yo o matlhajana  
(It is an overhasty, forward woman)

40. Ke [ngwana] yo o sebetwane  
(It is a quick-tempered child)

- 41(a) Ke [monna] yo o pelwana  
(It is a quick-tempered man)

- 41(b) Ke [monna] wa pelwana  
(It is a quick-tempered man)

- 42(a) Ke [monna] yo o ntwadumela  
(It is a tempestuous man)

- 42(b) Ke [monna] wa ntwadumela  
(It is a tempestuous man)

## 2.27 Talkative [bobalabadi]

43(a) Ke [monna] yo o bobalabadi

(It is a talkative man)

43(b) Ke [monna] wa bobalabadi

(It is a talkative man)

## 2.28 Careless [letlhaswa, lesutlha, nkwatle, matlhaswa]

44. Ke [mosadi] yo o lethaswa

(It is a careless woman)

45. Ke [motho] yo o lesutlha

(It is a careless person)

46. Ke [mosetsana] yo o nkwatle

(It is a careless girl)

47. Ke [mosadi] yo o matlhaswa

(It is a careless woman)

## 2.29 Irritating [matepe]

48(a) Ke [ngwana] yo o matepe

(It is an irritating and annoying child)

49(b) Ke [ngwana]wa matepe

(It is an irritating and annoying child)

## 2.30 Demanding [mosuga]

49 Ke [ngwana] yo o mosuga

(It is a demanding child)

## 2.31 Officious [bolaodi]

50(a) Ke [monna] yo o bolaodi

(It is an officious man)

50(b) Ke [onna]wa bolaodi

(It is an officious man)

## 2.32 Elusive [marelelekwane]

51(a) Ke [legodu] le le marelelekwane

(It is an elusive, slippery thief)

51(b) Ke [legodu] la marelelekwane

(It is an elusive, slippery thief)

## 2.33 Self-willed [boitaolo, segagapa]

52(a) Ke [ngwana] yo o boitaolo

(It is a self-willed child)

52(b) Ke [ngwana] wa boitaolo

(It is a self-willed child)

53. Ke [mosadi] yo o segagapa

(It is a self-willed woman)

## 2.34 Spendthrift [lesutlha]

54. Ke [mosadi yo o lesutlha

(It is a spendthrift woman)

## 2.35 Stubborn [logwadi; seteenene]

55(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o logwadi

(It is a stubborn woman)

55(b) Ke [mosadi] wa logwadi

(It is a stubborn woman)

56(a) Ke [motho] yo o seteenene

(It is a stubborn person)

56(b) Ke [motho wa seteenene

(It is a stubborn person)

## 2.36 Impudent [makgakga, bodipa]

57(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o makgakga

(It is an impudent, insolent woman)

57(b) Ke [mosadi] wa makgakga

(It is an impudent, insolent woman)

- 58(a) Ke [motho] yo o bodipa  
(It is an impudent person)
- 58(b) Ke [motho] wa bodipa  
(It is an impudent person)

2.37 Abusive [nkane]

- 59(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o nkane  
(It is a rude and abusive woman)
- 59(b) Ke [mosadi] wa nkane  
(It is a rude and abusive woman)

2.38 Lying [maaka]

- 60(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o maaka  
(It is a lying woman)
- 60(b) Ke [mosadi] wa maaka  
(It is a lying woman)

2.39 Jealous [lefufa]

- 61(a) Ke [motho] yo o lefufa  
(It is a jealous person)
- 61(b) Ke [motho] wa lefufa  
(It is a jealous person)

3. **Bad Habits**

3.1 Lazy [botswa, setshwakga; sebedu, motlapa]

- 1(a) Ke [ngwana] yo o botswa  
(It is a lazy child)
- 1(b) Ke [ngwana] wa botswa  
(It is a lazy child)
2. Ke [mosadi] yo o sethwakga  
(It is a lazy woman)
3. Ke [mosadi] yo o sebedu (It is a lazy women)



4. Ke [mosadi] yo o motlapa  
(It is a lazy woman)
- 3.2 Drunk [botagwa; botlhapelwa]
- 5(a) Ke [monna] yo o botagwa  
(It is a drunk man)
- 5(b) Ke [monna] wa botagwa  
(It is a drunk man)
- 6(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o botlhapelwa  
(It is a drunk woman)
- 6(b) Ke [mosadi] wa botlhapelwa  
(It is a drunk woman)
- 3.3 Sinful [moleofi]
7. Ke [Mosadi] yo o moleofi  
(It is a sinful woman)
- 3.4 Vagabond [malaomabe; bokgarakgatshegi]
8. Ke [monna] yo o malaomabe  
(It is a vagabond man)
- 9(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o bokgarakgatshegi  
(It is a woman who is a vagabond)
- 9(b) Ke [mosadi] wa bokgarakgatshegi  
(It is a woman who is a vagabond)
- 3.5 Dirty [sekgakga]
10. Ke [mosetsana] yo o sekgakga  
(It is a dirty girl)
- 3.6 Untidy [lesutlha, leswe]
11. Ke [mosadi] yo o lesutlha  
(It is an untidy woman)

12(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o leswe

(It is an untidy woman)

12(b) Ke [mosadi] wa leswe

(It is an untidy woman)

#### 4. Timid Characteristics

##### 4.1 Lonely [bodutu]

1(a) Ke [ngwana] yo o bodutu

(It is a lonely child)

1(b) Ke [ngwana] wa bodutu

(It is a lonely child)

##### 4.2 Tearful [sebeto]

2. Ke [motho] yo o sebeto

(It is a tearful person)

##### 4.3 Listless [mongodi]

3(a) Ke [ngwana] yo o mongodi

(It is a listless child)

3(b) Ke [ngwana] wa mongodi

(It is a listless child)

##### 4.4 Clumsy [setshomatshoma; setshururu]

4. Ke [motho] yo o setshomatshoma

(It is a clumsy person)

5. Ke mosadi yo o setshururu

(It is a clumsy woman)

##### 4.5 Gentle [bonolo]

6(a) Ke [ngwana] yo o bonolo

(It is a gentle child)

6(b) Ke [ngwana] wa bonolo

(It is a gentle child)

- 4.6 Timid [boi]
- 7(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o boi  
(It is a timid woman)
- 7(b) Ke [mosadi] wa boi  
(It is a timid woman)
- 4.7 Vacillating [bofetogi]
- 8(a) Ke [monna] yo o bofetogi  
(It is a vacillating man)
- 8(b) Ke [monna] wa bofetogi  
(It is a vacillating man)
- 4.8 Useless [motlepere, sebody; botlakala]
9. Ke [mosadi] yo o motlepere  
(It is a useless woman)
10. Ke [mosadi] yo o sebody  
(It is a useless woman)
- 11(a) Ke [ngwana] yo o botlakala  
(It is a useless child)
- 11(b) Ke [ngwana] wa botlakala  
(It is a useless child)
- 4.9 Feeble [botswafi]
- 12(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o botswafi  
(It is a feeble woman)
- 12(b) Ke [mosadi] wa botswafi  
(It is a feeble woman)
- 4.10 Wretched [mmotlana]
13. Ke [mosadi] yo o mmotlana  
(It is a wretched woman)

## 5. Intelligence

### 5.1 Intelligent [tlhogo; matlhabathakane, botlhale]

1(a) Ke [ngwana] yo o tlhogo

(It is an intelligent child)

1(b) Ke [ngwana] wa tlhogo

(It is an intelligent child)

2. Ke [monna] yo o matlhabathakane

(It is a quick-witted man)

3(a) Ke [mosimane] yo o botlhale

(It is an intelligent boy)

3(b) Ke [mosimane] wa botlhale

(It is an intelligent boy)

### 5.2 Resolute [bosweetsi, boatlhodi]

4(a) Ke [monna] yo o bosweetsi

(It is a resolute man)

4(b) Ke [monna] wa bosweetsi

(It is a resolute man)

5(a) Ke [monna] yo o boatlhodi

(It is a resolute man)

5(b) Ke [monna] wa boatlhodi

(It is a resolute man)

### 5.3 Bright and alert [motlhalefi; boitseanape]

6. Ke [monna] yo o motlhalefi

(It is a bright and alert man)

7(a) Ke [monna] yo o boitseanape

(It is a bright and alert man)

7(b) Ke [monna] wa boitseanape

(It is a bright and alert man)

**6. Retarded****6.1 Stupid [setshomatshoma, lesilo, setlaela]**

1. Ke [monna] yo o setshomatshoma  
(It is a stupid man)

2. Ke [ngwana] yo o lesilo  
(It is a stupid child)

3. Ke [ngwana] yo o setlaela  
(It is a stupid woman)

**6.2 Dull and stupid [sekopa, boruthwe]**

4. Ke [monna] yo o sekopa  
(It is a dull and stupid man)

5(a) Ke [mosetsana] yo o boruthwe  
(It is a dull and stupid girl)

5(b) Ke [mosetsana] wa boruthwe  
(It is a dull and stupid girl)

**6.3 Mad [botlhakana-tlhogo]**

6(a) Ke [monna] yo o botlhakanatlhogo  
(It is a mad man)

6(b) Ke [monna] wa botlhakanatlhogo  
(It is a mad man)

**6.4 Ignorant and empty-headed [botlhoka-kitso]**

7(a) Ke [motho] yo o botlhoka-kitso  
(It is an ignorant and empty-headed person)

7(b) Ke [motho] wa botlhoka-kitso  
(It is an ignorant and empty-headed person)

**6.5 Foolish [boapu, seramatla, setlatla]**

8(a) Ke [motho] yo o boapu  
(It is a foolish person)

- 8(b) Ke [motho] wa boapu  
(It is a foolish person)
9. Ke [monna] yo o seramatla  
(It is a foolish person)
10. Ke [ngwana] yo o setlatla  
(It is a foolish person)

6.6 Foolish and stupid [sematla, semaumau, seramuramu, sefeele; senene]

11. Ke [mosimane] yo o sematla  
(It is a foolish and stupid boy)
12. Ke [monna] yo o semaumau  
(It is a foolish and stupid man)
13. Ke [mosadi] yo o seramuramu  
(It is a foolish and stupid woman)
14. Ke [mosadi] yo o seleele  
(It is a foolish and stupid woman)
15. Ke [mosetsana] yo o senene  
(It is a foolish and stupid girl)

6.7 Naïve and foolish [segamugamu; setlamutlamu]

16. Ke [monna] yo o segamugamu  
(It is a naïve and foolish man)
17. Ke [monna] yo o setlamutlamu  
(It is a naïve and foolish man)

## 7. Skills

### 7.1 Skilful [sethakga, mokatisi, bokgoni]

1. Ke [morutabana] yo o sethakga  
(It is a skilful teacher)

2. Ke [monna] yo o mokatisi  
(It is a skilful man)

3a) Ke [motho] yo o bokgoni  
(It is a skilful man)

3(b) Ke [motho] wa bokgoni  
(It is a skilful man)

### 7.2 Experienced [matsetseleko, maitemogelo]

4(a) Ke [seopedi] se se matsetseleko  
(It is an experienced singer)

4(b) Ke [seopedi] sa matsetseleko  
(It is an experienced singer)

5(a) Ke [monna] yo o maitemogelo  
(It is an experienced man)

5(b) Ke [monna] wa maitemogelo  
(It is an experienced man)

### 7.3 Able [kgagapa, segwaba]

6. Ke [monna] yo o kgagapa  
(It is an able man)

7. Ke [mosadi] yo o segwaba  
(It is a very able woman)

### 7.4 Dextrous [sethakga]

8. Ke [mosadi] yo o sethakga  
(It is an dextrous woman)

**7.5 Orator [kgeleke]**

9. Ke [monna] yo o kgeleke  
(It is an orator)

**7.6 Handy [mabogodika]**

- 10(a) Ke [motho] yo o mabogodika  
(It is a handy person)
- 10(b) Ke [motho] wa mabogodika  
(It is a handy person)

**7.7 Artistic [setswerere]**

11. Ke [mosadi] yo o setswerere  
(It is an artistic woman)

**8. Wealth****8.1 Rich [sekgorane, mohumi, moikgoni]**

1. Ke [monna] yo o sekgorane  
(It is a rich man)
2. Ke [monna] yo o mohumi  
(It is a rich man)
3. Ke [monna] yo o moikgoni  
(It is a rich man)

**8.2 Poor [modidi, botlhoki, bokopi]**

4. Ke [mosadi] yo o modidi  
(It is a poor woman)
- 5(a) Ke [monna] yo o botlhoki  
(It is a poor man)
- 5(b) Ke [monna] wa botlhoki  
(It is a poor man)



6(a) Ke [mosadi] yo o bokopi

(It is a poor woman)

6(b) Ke [mosadi] wa bokopi

(It is a poor woman)

## CHAPTER 4

### DESCRIPTIVE POSSESSIVES

#### 1. THE AIM

The aim of this chapter is to investigate the descriptive possessive in Setswana. The descriptive possessive construction may appear with various interpretations. One may realise that some other descriptive possessives are given which do not occur as nominal relative stems. There is a clear distinction between nouns denoting simple individuals and nouns denoting groups.

#### 2. THE STRUCTURE OF THE POSSESSIVE

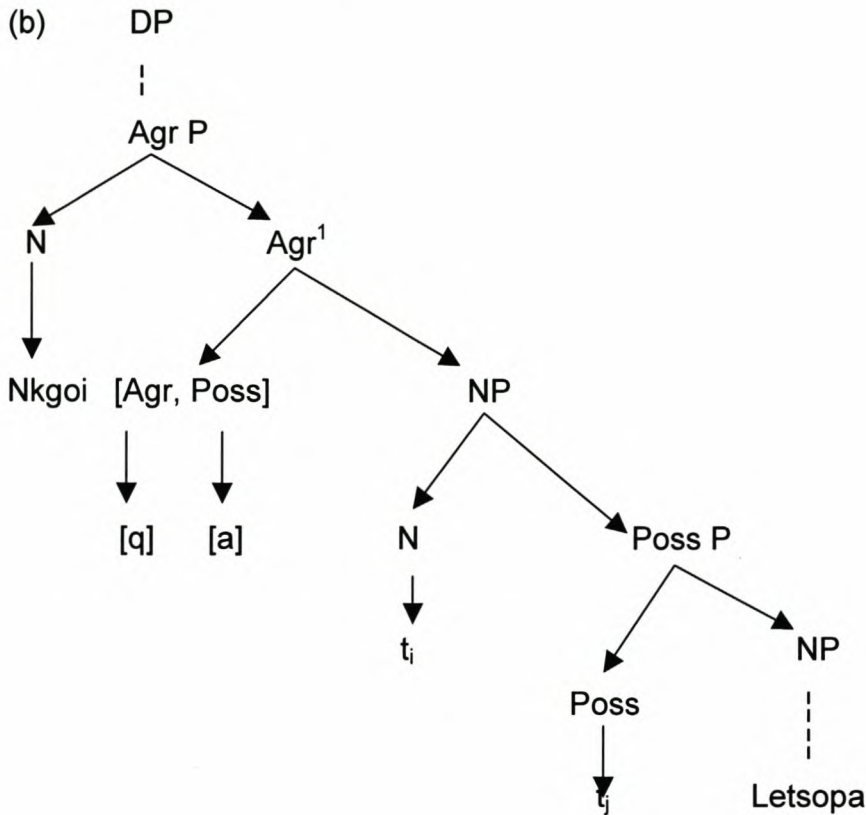
The possessive phrase in Setswana uses a possessive [a] to indicate the possessor. This possessive [a] has an agreement morpheme of the possession as an essential requirement e.g.

- 1) [buka [ya [ngwana]  
(The book of the child)

In the noun phrase above, the NP with *buka* as head is the possession while the NP with *ngwana* as head is the possessor. This NP with *ngwana* as head is also the complement of the possessive phrase with the possessive [a] as head. This possessive [a] thus indicates who the possessor is and it has clearly possessive sense. It also assigns a genitive case to its complement *ngwana*, i.e. the person who own or has the book. This piece of personal property, i.e. the book is then responsible for supplying the agreement on the possessive [a] for the purpose of linking the possession to the possessor. The agreement morpheme of *buka* is [i] and this agreement morpheme fuses with [a], i.e. [I+a → ya]. Thus the possessive [a] has clearly a sense of relating to the identification of the possessor, i.e. the owner of the book above.

The type of construction in the case of the descriptive possessive is exactly the same as above. Even the possessive [a] with an agreement morpheme of the head noun of the NP is present. The structure of such a phrase may be represented by the following phrase:

2)(a) [Nkgo [ya [letsopa]  
(Pot of clay i.e. clay pot)



In this structure the possessive [a] still appears but it does not have any reference to possession. Instead, it now has the function of description, i.e. it introduces the substance that the pot is made of which is clay. The head noun nkgo above has to appear next to the AgrP for the possessive [a] to receive agreement. That is why the possessive [a] appears next to Agr above.

### 3. THE SEMANTICS OF THE DESCRIPTIVE POSSESSIVE

The descriptive possessive construction in (2b) above may appear with various interpretations. The one which is most widely attended has the descriptive part of the complement of the possessive [a] as in (2b) above, i.e. letsopa gives a description of the substance out of which the pot is made of; a wide variety of subcategories have already been attended. Thus the first distinction is the descriptive one.

### 3.1 The descriptive possessive

See the chapter on the relative clause and specifically section 6. It has been established in Section 6 that the descriptive noun may appear as a nominal relative stem or as a complement of the possessive [a]. Most of those descriptive nouns appear in both constructions but it has also been indicated that there are some of these nouns which may not appear as a complement of the descriptive possessive [a]. In this way 8 major semantic categories have already been established: qualification, speed, distance, difficulty, value, dimension, physical property and human characteristics.

Below some other descriptive possessives are given which do not occur also as nominal relative stems. The complement NP of the possessive [a] is still the descriptive part which indicates what the head noun of the whole NP is like, i.e. which describes that noun:

#### 3.1.1 The complement of the possessive [a] is a noun phrase

##### 1. Natural phenomena

##### 1.1 Earth

- (a) Mmu (soil)  
Ntlo [ya mmu]  
(The house of soil)
  
- (b) Letsopa (clay)  
Nkgo [ya letsopa]  
(Clay pot)
  
- (c) Seretse (mud)  
Noka [ya seretse]  
(Muddy river)
  
- (d) Letsoku (red clay)  
Nkgo [ya letsoku]  
(Red clay pot)

- (e) Molora (ash)  
Tsela [ya molora]  
(Ash road)
- (f) Lerole (dust)  
Tsela [ya lerole]  
(Dusty road)
- (g) Lekgwarana (gravel)  
Tsela [ya lekgwarana]  
(Gravel road)
- (h) Motlhaba (sandy soil)  
Tsela [ya motlhaba]  
(Sandy road)
- (i) Kalaka (limy soil)  
Lerole [la kalaka]  
(The dust of limy soil)

## 1.2 Thaba (Mountain)

- (a) Thaba (mountain)  
Podi [ya thaba]  
(Mountain goat)
- (b) Mfapha (hillside)  
Tsela [ya mfapha]  
(Hillside road)
- (c) Thota (hillock)  
Segobo [sa thota]  
(Hillock curve)

- (d) Mokgatsha (canyon)  
Matlapa [a mokgatsha]  
(Canyon rocks)
- (e) Mokong (steep ascent)  
Thaba [ya mokong]  
(Steep mountain)
- (f) Mokgokolosa (descent)  
Tsela [ya mokgokolosa]  
(Descending road)
- (g) Legaga (cliff)  
Lenong [la legaga]  
(Cliff vulture)
- (h) Lengope (donga)  
Seretse [sa lengope]  
(Donga mud)
- (i) Mogogoro (gorge)  
Ditlhare [tsa mogogoro]  
(Gorge trees)

### 1.3 Metsi (Water)

- (a) Metsi (water)  
Sego [sa metsi]  
(Water - calabash)
- (b) Sediba (well)  
Metsi [a sediba]  
(Well water)

- (c) Mogobe (pool)  
Menang [ya mogobe]  
(Pool mosquitoes)
- (d) Lewatle (sea)  
Metsi [a lewatle]  
(Sea water)
- (e) Noka (river)  
Ditlhare [tsa noka]  
(River trees)
- (f) Molapo (river)  
Segwagwa [sa molapo]  
(River frog)
- (g) Motswedi (fountain)  
Metsi [a motswedi]  
(Fountain water)
- (h) Kgophu (ravine)  
Diphatadikgagane [tsa kgophu]  
(Ravine ferns)
- (i) Diphororo (waterfall)  
Keleketlo [ya diphororo]  
(Waterfall flow)
- (j) Mokwara (waterhole)  
Diphologolo [tsa mokwara]  
(Waterhole animals)

#### 1.4 Dimela (Vegetation)

- (a) Sekgwa (Forest)  
Ditlhare [tsa sekgwa]  
(Forest trees)
- (b) Naga (Veld)  
Diphologolo [tsa naga]  
(Animals of the veld)
- (c) Lesuthu (thicket)  
Mebitlwa [ya lesuthu]  
(Thorns of the thicket)
- (d) Lebala (treeless area)  
Ditshenekegi [tsa lebala]  
(Insects of a treeless area)

#### 1.5 Lesedi (light)

- (a) Lesedi (light)  
Ponalo [ya lesedi]  
(Light's visibility)
- (b) Lefifi (darkness)  
Bosigo [ba lefifi]  
(The night of darkness)
- (c) Kgalalelo (shining)  
Naledi [ya kgalalelo]  
(Shining star)



- (d) Phatsimo (bright/glittering)  
Mmala [wa phatsimo]  
(Glittering colour)
- (e) Kganya (flash)  
Marang [a kganya]  
(Rays of the flash)
- (f) Letsatsi (sun)  
Marang [a letsatsi]  
(Rays of the sun)
- (g) Ngwedi (moon)  
Lesedi [la ngwedi]  
(The light of the moon)
- (h) Naledi (star)  
Lesedi [la naledi]  
(The light of the star)
- (i) Moriti (shade)  
Setlhare [sa moriti]  
(The tree of shadow)

#### 1.6 Loapi (weather)

- (a) Pula (rain)  
Marothodi [a pula]  
(Rain drops)
- (b) Mosarasarane (drizzle)  
Pula [ya mosarasarane]  
(The rain of drizzle)

- (c) Mookodi (shower of rain)  
Pula [ya mookodi]  
(Shower of rain)
- (d) Tsheola (early rain)  
Pula [ya tsheola]  
(Early rain)
- (e) Sephai (first rain)  
Pula [ya sephai]  
(First rain)
- (f) Medupe (continual rain)  
Pula [ya medupe]  
(Continual rain)
- (g) Kgogolammoko (spring rain)  
Pula [ya kgogolammoko]  
(Spring rain)
- (h) Matlakadibe (thunderstorm)  
Pula [ya matlakadibe]  
(The rain of thunderstorm)
- (i) Sefako (hail)  
Pula [ya sefako]  
(The rain of hail)
- (j) Magadima (lightning)  
Pula [ya magadima]  
(The rain of lightning)
- (k) Matlorotloro (rain in abundance)  
Pula [ya matlorotloro]  
(The rain of abundance)

- (l) Mouwane (mist)  
Thaba [ya mouwane]  
(Misty mountain)
  
- (m) Maru (clouds)  
Mosi [wa maru]  
(Smoke of the clouds)
  
- (n) Monyo (dew)  
Marothodi [a monyo]  
(Drops of dew)
  
- (o) Segagane (frost)  
Kgapetla [ya segagane]  
(The ice of frost)
  
- (p) Tladi (thunder)  
Leru [la tladi]  
(Thunder cloud)
  
- (q) Semathane (show)  
Thaba [ya semathane]  
(Snowy mountain)

#### 1.7 Phefo (wind)

- (a) Phefo (wind)  
Lefelo [la phefo]  
(Windy place)
  
- (b) Kgwanyape (tornado)  
Lefelo [la kgwanyape]  
(A place of tornado)

- (c) Letsubutsubu (stormy wind)  
Nako [ya matsubutsubu]  
(Time of stormy winds)
- (d) Sefefo (whirlwind)  
Nako [ya sefefo]  
(Time of whirlwind)
- (e) Ledimo (hurricane)  
Lefelo [la ledimo]  
(Place of hurricane)
- (f) Thungthung/setsuatsuwe (dust-storm)  
Nako [ya setsuatsuw]  
(Time of dust-storm)

#### 1.8 Leratla (noise)

- (a) Leratla (noise)  
Baithuti [ba leratla]  
(Noisy students)
- (b) Mokgwasa (rustling sound)  
Phefo [ya mokgwasa]  
(Rustling wind)
- (c) Moduuetso (yodelling cheer)  
Basadi [ba moduuetso]  
(Yodelling women)
- (d) Molodi (whistling sound)  
Modumo [wa molodi]  
(Whistling sound)

- (e) Selelo (crying)  
Bana [ba selelo]  
(Crying children)

#### 1.9 Mosi (smoke)

- (a) Molelo (smoke)  
Molelo [wa mosi]  
(Smoky fire)
- (b) Semoko (smog)  
Malatlha [a semoko]  
(Coal smog)

#### 1.10 Maatla (power)

- (a) Maatla (power)  
Phefo [ya maatla]  
(Powerful wind)
- (b) Boganka (force)  
Banna [ba boganka]  
(Forceful men)
- (c) Thata (power)  
Enjene [ya thata]  
(Powerful engine)

## 2. Natural Object

- (a) Letlapa (stone)  
Lebeta [la letlapa]  
(Stone wall)

- (b) Tshipi (iron)  
Kgoro [ya tshipi]  
(Iron gate)
  
- (c) Taemane (Diamond)  
Palamonwana [ya taemane]  
(Diamond ring)
  
- (d) Kgotlho (copper)  
Leseke [la kgotlho]  
(Copper bracelet)
  
- (e) Legong (Wood)  
Molelo [wa legong]  
(Wooden fire)
  
- (f) Gouta (Gold)  
Setshwantsho [sa gouta]  
(Golden picture)

### 3.1.2 The complement of the possessive [a] is a locative phrase

1. Diphologolo [tša [mo sekgweng]  
(Wild animals)
  
2. Ntlo [ya [kwa morago]  
(Back room)
  
3. Lebati [la [kwa pele]  
(Front door)
  
4. Dijo [tša [ka mo gae]  
(Home-made food)

5. Dibuka [tša [mo laeborari]  
(Library books)
6. Diphologolo [tša [mo metsing]  
(Water-animals)
7. Dijo [tša [mo thining]  
(Tin food)
8. Ke basadi [ba [kwa kgosing]  
(They are chief's women)
9. Bana [ba [mo motseng]  
(They are village children)

### 3.1.3 The complement of the possessive [a] is a temporal noun phrase

1. Maduo [a [ngwaga]  
(Year marks)
2. Puo [ya [maabane]  
(Yesterday's speech)
3. Ditlhatlhobo [tša [ngwanatsele]  
(November examinations)
4. Teko [ya [gompieno]  
(Today's test)
5. Diaparo [tša [jaanong]  
(Modern clothes)
6. Sejanaga [sa [ngogola]  
(Last year's car)

7. Maungo [a [selemo]  
(Summer fruit)

#### 3.1.4 The complement of the possessive [a] is an infinitive clause

1. Lefelo [la [go thuma]  
(A place to swim)
2. Dilo [tsa [go tshameka]  
(Things to play with)
3. Lefelo [la [go nna]  
(Place to sit)
4. Lefelo [la [go kopana]  
(Place to meet)
5. Dilo [tsa [go apara]  
(Things to wear)
6. Phaposi [ya [go robala]  
(Room to sleep)
7. Ntlwana [ya [go ithusetsa]  
(Small room to relief oneself)
8. Nako [ya [go bua]  
(Time to speak)
9. Dilo [tsa [go apaya]  
(Things to cook)
10. Nako [ya [go ikhutsha]  
(Time to rest)



### 3.1.5 The complement of the possessive [a] is a gore-clause

1. Ke utlwile [dikgang [tsa [gore batlile]  
(I heard [the news that they have arrived])
2. Ke itse [nako [ya [gore kopano e tla bo e fedile]  
(I know [the time that the meeting will be over])
3. Ke utlwile [dikgang [tsa [gore o ne a sa lwale]  
(I heard [the news that he was not sick])
4. Ke tshotse [dikgang [tsa [gore merafe e a lwa]  
(I have [the news that all the nations are fighting])
5. Ke utlwile [dikgetse [tsa [gore magodu a bolailwe]  
(I heard [cases that thieves were killed])
6. Ke itse [nako [ya [gore re kopane]  
(I know [the time that we should meet])
7. Ke na le [tshepo [ya [gore ba tla tla]  
(I have [confidence that they will come])
8. Ke utlwile [dikgang [tsa [gore Mosupologo ke letsatsi la mogwanto]  
(I heard [news that Monday is a day of strike])

### 3.2 **Group nouns**

There is a clear distinction between nouns denoting simple individuals such as mosimane (boy) and nouns denoting groups e.g. setlhophā (group). Such group nouns are included in the set of collective nouns. These group nouns may also be differentiated by their appearance with specific predicates such as verbs ending on [-an-]. Thus, group nouns satisfy semantic plurality requirements on selection:

1(a) Basetsana ba tla kopana ka 3

(The girls will meet at 3)

1(b) Setlhopha se tla kopana ka 3

(The group will meet at 3)

The predicate kopana above, may only appear with plural phrases [basetšana] or singular group-denoting noun phrases [setlhopha], but it may not appear with singular individual denoting noun phrases:

2.\* Mosetsana o tla kopana ka 3

(The girl will meet at 3)

Such group nouns as in (1b) above may appear in a descriptive possessive construction. The group noun is always the head of the noun phrase. The noun phrase which is the complement of the possessive [a] gives the entity of which a group is selected:

3. [Setlhopha [sa [banna]

(Group of men)

In (3) above, a group is selected from the men. This relation is interpreted as a group-member relation and it forms part of the lexical hierarchy known as meronymy.

The following group nouns may be attested in Setswana:

## 1. GROUPS

### 1.1 Groups of people:

Group:

Setlhopha sa banna

(Group of men)

Lesomo la batho

(Group of people)

Setlhotswana sa bana  
(Small group of children)

Segongwana sa bana  
(Small group of children)

Crowd:

Kokoano ya basadi  
(Crowd of women)

Group or Crowd:

Sekwata sa batho  
(Group of people)  
Seboka sa batho  
(Crowd of people)

Company:

Setlamo sa batho  
(Company of people)

Group or company:

Lekoko la batho  
(Group of people)

Society:

Mokgatlho wa basadi  
(Society of women)

Community or Society:

Loago lwa basadi  
(Society of women)

Gathering:

Phuthego ya banna  
(Gathering of men)

Regiment:

Mophato wa batlhabani  
(Regiment of soldiers)

Committee:

Khuduthamaga ya borre  
(Committee of men)

Nation or tribe:

Setšhaba sa Batswana  
(Nation of Tswanas)

**1.2 Groups of animals:**

Dikgomo

Motlhape wa dikgomo  
(Herd of cattle)

Moraka wa dikgomo  
(Herd of cattle of the same kraal)

Dinonyane, ditsie

Segopa sa dinonyane/ditsie  
(Flock of birds/locusts)

Dikolobe

Serapa sa dikolobe  
(Litter of pigs)

Dinku, dipodi

Lotsomane lwa dinku/dipodi  
(Flock of sheep/goats)

Dintšwa

Motlhape wa dintšwa  
(Pack of dogs)

Dinotshe

Motshitshi wa dinotshe  
(Swarm of bees)  
Semana sa dinotshe  
(Big swarm of bees)

Ditshoswane

Losaisai lwa ditshoswane  
(Army of ants)

Ditsie

Lesogodi la ditsie  
(Swarm of locusts)

Dikgokong

Lotlhaka lwa dikgokong  
(Herd of wildebeest)

Diphologolo

Serapa sa diphologolo  
(Herd of game)

**2. HEAP**

**2.1 Heap:**

Mokgobe wa diako  
(Heap of mealie-cobs)

**2.5 Pile of bones:**

Lewuwara la marapo

Lowa la marapo

(Pile of bones)

Lewalala la marapo

(Great pile of bones)

**3. BUNDLE:**

**3.1 Bundle of wood, sheaf of grain:**

Ngata ya dikgong

(Bundle of wood)

Ngata ya korong

(Sheaf of wheat)

**3.2 Bundle of clothes:**

Thabura ya diaparo

(Bundle of clothes)

**3.3 Big bundle:**

Mositlha wa dithapo

(Big bundle of ropes)

**3.4 Role:**

Momenagano wa bothale

(Roll of wire)

**3.5 Load:**

Morwalo wa dilo

(Load/freight of things)

**4. QUANTITY:**

**4.1 Quantity:**

Selekano sa madi

(Quantity of money)

**4.2 Small quantity:**

Phera ya motsoko

(Small quantity of snuff)

Bonnye jwa madi

(Small quantity of money)

Monokela wa dijo

(Small quantity of food)

**4.3 Small quantity given as gift:**

Lemme la dijo

(Small portion of food)

**4.4 Small quantity in a container:**

Makgaritlha a mašwi

(Small quantity of milk)

**4.5 Large quantity:**

Tšhwantlha ya madi

(Large quantity of money)

Kutla ya meroba

(Large number of heifers)

Bontsi ba dilo

(Large number of things)

Boidiidi jwa batho

(Large number of people)

Morero wa madi

(Great deal of money)

**4.6 Large quantity in a container:**

Motlhotlho wa dikgong

(Big quantity of wood)

**4.7 Number, sum:**

Palo ya batho

(Number of people (census))

Palo ya madi

(Sum of money)

**4.8 Specific number, sum, amount:**

Bokana jwa madi

(This sum of money)

**4.9 Abundance:**

Ntletsentletse ya dijo

(Abundance of food)

Letlepu la dijo

(Abundance of food)

Monono wa dijo

(Abundance of food)

**5. GATHERING:**

**5.1 Gathering, assembly:**

Kgobokano ya bana

(Gathering of children)



Kokoano ya batho  
(Assembly of people)

**5.2 Gathering, congregation:**

Phuthego ya badumedi  
(Congregation of believers)

**5.3 Meeting:**

Pitso ya banna  
(Meeting of men)

Kopano ya basadi  
(Meeting of women)

**5.4 Secret Meeting:**

Khuduthamaga ya batho  
(Secret meeting of people)

**5.5 Council:**

Lekgotla la banna  
(Council of men)

**6. SERIES:**

**6.1 Series, range:**

Motseletsele wa dithaba  
(Series of mountain)

Tlhatlhamano ya dithota  
(Range of hillocks)

**6.2 Sequence:**

Tatelano ya dingwaga  
(Sequence of years)

**6.3 Succession:**

Tlhatlhamano ya dikopano  
(Succession of meetings)

**6.4 Line:**

Kologano ya ditafole  
(Line of tables)

**6.5 Row, line, queue:**

Mola wa basimane  
(Queue of boys)

**6.6 Procession:**

Mokoloko wa batho  
(Procession of people)

**3.3 Partitives**

The partitive indicates that a part of a collective whole is meant. It is also known as a partitive genitive, i.e. a genitive denoting that a part is taken of a divisible whole. Here are examples of other languages:

**Bundle (Dzanda)**

A bundle refers to a number of articles which are tied, fastened or held together across the middle:

Tshihunde	(bundle of grass)
Dzanda	(bundle of wood)
Muvhuli	(bundle of dagga)
Khula	(bundle of bananas)

**Quantity**

A quantity refers to an amount or number:

Muvhuli	(large quantity of money)
Murutshe	(large quantity of locusts on a stick)

Mbunda	(large quantity of vegetables)
Shovu	(large quantity of banana trees)
Lunda	(large quantity of peanuts)
Vhunguvhi	(large quantity of worms)
Muse	(large quantity of tobacco)
Tshifhango tsha mavill	(shower of blows)
Suthu	(large quantity of banana trees)
Matshava	(pools of mud)

### Gathering

A gathering is a meeting of people for a purpose:

Khoro	(gathering of people at a chief's kraal)
Mutangano	(meeting, gathering)
Khunyeleli	(gathering of people at a chief's kraal)
Guvhangano	(Meeting; gathering)

### Series

Series refers to a group of things of the same kind or related in some way, coming one after the other or in order:

Thevekano	(series, succession, sequence)
Mutevhe	(series, succession, sequence)
Muduba	(line of things or animates)
Gwilisha	(line of animates)
Mutshotshonono	(line of ants)
Laini	(line)
Den	(Line of girls at an initiation , school e.g. domba)

The partitive in Xhosa also appears as the head in a possessive construction as in the case of nouns denoting groups:

Lsiqendu	(portion, section of a whole)
Lqhunuza	(small piece)
Lqondo	(degree)
Uhlobo	(type, kind)
Ltoti	(can)
Lglasi	(glass)

The examples above, give an indication of partitives in Xhosa, e.g.:

[ikomityi [yeti]]

(A cup of tea)

The part or piece in a partitive possessive construction is the head of the noun phrase. The noun phrase which is the complement of the possessive [a] gives the whole from which a part or a piece is expressed. The following partitive constructions appears in Setswana:

1. Artifacts

- (a) Bogale (blade)  
Bogale ba thipa  
(Blade of knife)
  
- (b) Meno (teeth)  
Meno a foroko  
(Teeth of a fork)
  
- (c) Malomela (handle)  
Malomela a lefeelo  
(Handle of a broom)
  
- (d) Sebesetso/onto (oven)  
Sebesetso sa setofo  
(Oven of a stove)
  
- (e) Leoto (leg)  
Leoto la setilo  
(Leg of a chair)
  
- (f) Sethibo (stopper)  
Sethibo sa botlolo  
(Stopper of a bottle)

- (g) Sekhurumelo (lid)  
Sekhurumelo sa pitsa  
(Lid of a pot)
  
- (h) Leotwana (wheel)  
Leotwana la peretshitshwana  
(Wheel of a bicycle)
  
- (i) Enjene (engine)  
Enjene ya koloi  
(Engine of a car)
  
- (j) Lebota (wall)  
Lebota la moago  
(Wall of a building)
  
- (k) Marulelo (roof)  
Marulelo a ntlo  
(Roof of a house)
  
- (l) Mojako (door)  
Mojako wa lebenkele  
(Door of a shop)
  
- (m) Matshego (foundation)  
Matshego a ntlo  
(Foundation of a house)
  
- (n) Senara (strings)  
Senara sa katara  
(Strings of guitar)
  
- (o) Kholoro/molala (collar)  
Kholoro ya hempe  
(Collar of a shirt)

- (p) Letsogo (sleeve)  
Letsogo la baki  
(Sleeve of a jacket)
  
- (q) Leoto (leg)  
Leoto la borukgwe  
(Leg of a trouser)
  
- (r) Lebanta (belt)  
Lebanta la borukgwe  
(Belt of a trouser)
  
- (s) Konopo (button)  
Konopo ya mosese  
(Button of a dress)
  
- (t) Kgogedi (buckle)  
Kgogedi ya lebanta  
(Buckle of a belt)
  
- (u) Moroko (seam)  
Moroko wa mosese  
(Seam of a dress)
  
- (v) Setena (bar)  
Setena sa molora  
(Bar of a soap)
  
- (w) Tšhwantlha (bundle)  
Tšhwantlha ya madi  
(Buckle of money)

- (x) Metara (meter)  
Metara wa lesela  
(Meter of a cloth)
- (y) Para (pair)  
Para ya ditlhako  
(Pair of shoes)
- (z) Molepo (handle)  
Molelpo wa kgameo  
(Handle of a bucket)

## 2. Liquids

Dieledi (Liquids)

- (b) Kopi ya tee  
(A cup of tea)
- (c) Botlolo ya setlhare  
(A bottle of medicine)
- (d) Galase ya metsi  
(A glass of water)
- (e) Segoa sa bojawa  
(A calabash of a beer)
- (f) Litara ya mašwi  
(A liter of milk)
- (g) Lekase la dinotsididi  
(A crate of cooldrinks)
- (h) Moteme wa parafene/mafura  
(A tin of paraffin)

2. Food

## Dijo (food)

- (i) Mogopo wa dijo  
(A plate of food)
  
- (j) Kopi ya sopho  
(A cup of soup)
  
- (k) Leswana la letswai  
(A teaspoon of salt)
  
- (l) Lengwathwana la nama  
(A piece of meat)
  
- (m) Lofu ya senkgwe  
(A loaf of bread)
  
- (n) Lengwathwana la senkgwe  
(A slice of bread)
  
- (o) Moteme wa kgotla-o-mone  
(A tin of jam)
  
- (p) Leswana la sukiri  
(A spoon of sugar)
  
- (q) Mofuta wa dijo  
(Type of food)
  
- (r) Lengwathwana la bogobe  
(Portion of porridge)
  
- (s) Kabo ya nama  
(Share of meat)



- (t) Lengothe la sukiri  
(A lump of sugar)
- (u) Kgetse ya sukiri  
(A bag of sugar)
- (v) Mfama wa kgomo  
(A side of beef)
- (w) Tlhogo ya nku  
(A head of a sheep)
- (x) Sehuba/nkgara ya kgogo  
(A breast of a chicken)
- (y) Serope sa kgogo  
(Thigh of a chicken)
- (z) Lefuka la kgogo  
(Wing of a chicken)
- (aa) Mokuane wa kgomo  
(Rump of a beef)
- (bb) Mogodu wa kgomo  
(Rumen of a beef)

#### 4. Plants

Dijwalo (plants)

- (a) Ditlhaka tsa korong  
(Grains of wheat)
- (b) Leledu la mmidi  
(Beard of mealie)

- (c) Lethare la sejalo  
(Leaf of a plant)
- (d) Malomo a setlhare  
(Flowers of a tree)
- (e) Seako sa mmopo  
(A cob of mealie)
- (f) Tshimo ya mabele  
(Field of corns)
- (g) Tshingwana ya merogo  
(Garden of vegetables)
- (h) Mafura a sonobolomo  
(Oil of sunflower)
- (i) Dithotse tsa lephutshe  
(Seed of pumpkin)
- (j) Matlhogelwa a khabeje  
(Plants of cabbage)
- (k) Bopi ba korong  
(Meal of wheat)
- (l) Sethu sa mmopo  
(Empty maize-cob)
- (m) Letlhaka la mmopo  
(Stalk of mealie)
- (n) Letharapa la setlhare  
(Stump of tree)

- (o) Dikala tsa setlhare  
(Branches of tree)
- (p) Dithapo tsa tamati  
(Seeds of tomato)
- (q) Akere ya mabele  
(Acre of corns)
- (r) Kilogerama ya ditapole  
(Kilogram of potatoes)

5. Body Parts

- (a) Mala a ngwana  
(Stomach of a child)
- (b) Molala wa ngwana  
(Neck of a child)
- (c) Pelo ya mosadi  
(Heart of a woman)
- (d) Letlalo la kgomo  
(Skin of a cow)
- (e) Leoto la tonki  
(Leg of a donkey)
- (f) Mabele a mosadi  
(Breasts of a woman)
- (g) Sefatlhego sa monna  
(The face of a man)

- (h) Matlho a ntšwa  
(Eyes of a dog)
- (i) Marama a mosetsana  
(Cheeks of a girl)
- (j) Tedu ya monnamogolo  
(Beard of an old man)
- (k) Seledu sa lesea  
(Chin of a baby)
- (l) Molomo wa mosadi  
(Mouth of a woman)
- (m) Seatla sa mosetsana  
(An arm of a girl)
- (n) Letsogo la mosimane  
(Hand of a boy)
- (o) Maoto a monna  
(Feet of a man)
- (p) Dinala tsa mosadi  
(Nails of a woman)
- (q) Menwana ya ngwana  
(Toes of a child)
- (r) Serope sa mosadi  
(Thigh of a woman)
- (s) Moriri wa mosimane  
(Hair of a boy)

- (t) Boboa ba nku  
(Wool of a sheep)
- (u) Mogatla wa ntšwa  
(Tail of a dog)
- (v) Diphuka tsa nonyane  
(Wings of a bird)
- (w) Diphofa tsa nonyane  
(Feathers of a bird)
- (x) Serethe sa ngwana  
(Heel of a child)
- (y) Santlhoko sa kgogo  
(Gall of a chicken)
- (z) Ditsebe tsa ntšwa  
(Ears of a dog)

6. Numerals

- (a) Lesome la bana  
(Ten children)
- (b) Lekgolo la dijanaga  
(Hundred cars)
- (c) Sekete sa basetsana  
(Thousand girls)

#### 4. CONCLUSIONS

In this chapter one can realize that the descriptive possessive construction may appear with various interpretations like in the possessive phrase in Setswana a possessive [a] is used to indicate the possessor,

e.g. [buka [ya [ngwana]

(The book of the child)

The NP with buka as head is the possession while the NP with ngwana as head is the possessor.

The descriptive possessive may appear with various interpretations i.e. the descriptive noun may appear as a minimal relative stem or as a complement of the possessive [a]. Some other descriptive possessives had been given which do not occur also as nominal relative stems. Eight major semantics categories have already been established such as qualification, speed, distance, difficulty, value, dimension, physical property and human characteristics.

The descriptive possessives are given which do not occur also as nominal relative stems i.e. see 3.1.1 up to 3.3 where the examples have been stated such as the complement of the possessive [a] is a noun phrase,

e.g. Tsela [ya motlhaba]

(Sandy road)

Pula [ya magadima]

(The rain of lightning)

## CHAPTER 5

### CONCLUSIONS

The main findings on the study of the descriptive nominal modifiers in Setswana can be summarized as follows:

- Adjectives specify the attributes of nouns i.e. the quality which forms part of the nature of a person or thing. Thus, adjectives modify or describe nouns within a noun phrase.
- Adjectives generally occur in an attributive position within a noun phrase as indicated above, but they may also occur in a predicative position:

Attributive: [ngwana [yo montle]  
(A beautiful child)

Predicative: [ngwana [o [montle]  
(The child is beautiful)

- There is a major class of lexical items in the languages of the world which consists of nouns, verbs and adjectives. This major class constitutes open classes i.e. one may always add new lexical items to these three lexical items.
- The category adjective in Setswana is problematic because it differs with regard to its semantic, grammatical and phonological representations.
- Semantically they specify the attributes of nouns, as indicated above. Traditionally, the following categories in Setswana have this semantic property:

Morphological adjectives: [Mosadi [yo [montle]  
(A beautiful woman)

Relative clause: [Monna [yo [o-humileng]  
(A rich man)

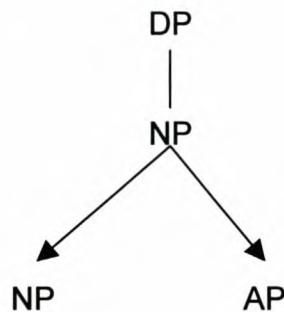
Descriptive possessives: (Mosadi [wa [senatla]  
(A brave woman)

- These three categories above differ in their grammatical representation: The morphological adjective must have obligatory agreement with its head noun and it constitutes a closed class with very few adjectival stems. The descriptive possessive is characterized by the compulsory presence of a possessive followed by a descriptive noun or preceded by such a noun. The relative clause may have either copulative or non-copulative verbs in such a clause.

- In the case of the morphological adjective, the following findings have been established:

\*The adjective appears in an adjectival phrase (AP) which has to consist of a determiner and an adjective: [yo [mogolo]. The adjective may be qualified by an intensifier such as thata: [yo [mogolo thata].

\*The AP usually appears as a complement of a noun within a NP which forms part of a determiner phrase (DP):



\*The determined in the AP has the same morphological structure as the demonstrative of the first position; i.e. morphologically it must have agreement with a head noun together with a root [A] e.g. Class 7 : [se + A → sê].

\*The intensifier of an adjective may be various categories such as ADV, PP, e.g.

ADV : [yo [mogolo [thata]

PP : [yo [mosesane [ka bogale]



\*The adjective itself consists of an agreement morpheme and a stem. The adjectival roots are restricted in number and they may be classified into five semantic categories:

1. Dimension:           - golo (big)  
                              - Khutshwane (short)
2. Age:                   - šwa (young, new, modern)  
                              - gologolo (old)
3. Colour:               - nala (red and white)  
                              - sweu (white)
4. Value:                - ntle (beautiful)  
                              - bé (bad, ugly; evil)
5. Number:              - ntsi (plenty, many)  
                              - ne (four)

The agreement morpheme on the adjectival root has to agree with the head noun in the NP. This agreement morpheme has the same form as the noun class prefix of the head noun:

<u>Class</u>	<u>Example</u>
1 : [mo -]	Mosetsana [yo monnye] o ile (The small girl has gone)
2 : [ba -]	Banna [ba bagolo] ba jele (Old men have eaten)

The adjectival agreement morpheme of class 9 and 10 may have an influence on the adjectival stem:

[Ke ntlo [ê [ntšwa]  
(It is a new house)

Monosyllabic:       n - be → mpe (bad; ugly)  
                          [Ke [ntlo [ê [m - pe]  
                          (It is a bad house)

Polysyllabic: n - golo → kgolo (big)  
 [Ke [ntlo [ê [kgolo]  
 (It is a big house)

In some instances the prefix of class 8 behaves in the same way as the prefix of class 10:

Class 10 : Dipodi [tse tharo]

Class 8 : Dithhare [tse tharo]

The locative classes and the infinitive use the same agreement on the adjective : go.

Infinitive : go - ja [mo [go - golo]  
 (Eating too much)

Loc.: felo [mo [go - golo]  
 (on a large place)

The determiner can be kwa, fa or mo e.g.:

Felo [kwa [go - golo]  
 (from a large/big place)

Felo [mo [go - golo]  
 (On a large place)

Felo [fa [go - golo]  
 (At a large place)

With the adjective stem beginning with b the stem assimilates with the prefix of class 1 and 3: mo - botlana → mmotlana (small).

Ngwana yo [mmotlana]  
 (Younger child)

\*The adjectival root may appear with the affixes -ana, -nyana and -gadi:

The adjective stem has been divided into the adjective root and the suffixes -ana; -nyana or -gadi. The meaning of some of the adjectival stems may be modified by the addition of these suffixes, e.g.:

Koloi [e khibitswana]

(Slightly red car)

Dipodi [tse pedinyana]

(Only two little goats)

Pelo [e mpegadi]

(A very bad/evil heart)

\*The adjectival root may be reduplicated depending on the emphasis:

Meno a [masweusweu]

(Very white teeth)

Metsi a [mantsintsi]

(Very much water)

They may be transposed to other categories:

A → V - Sweufala (become white)

- sweu - fal - a

[< - sweu (white)]

Ntlo [e sweufala] ka mmala]

(The house becomes white in colour)

They may be compounded to indicate the subsidiary colour in pattern:

Stems - fifadu (black) and - hibidu (red)

Kgomo [e khibidu - fifadu]

(Red and black cow)

\*The adjective may appear attributively in an NP or predicatively as complement of a verb:

Attributive: ngwana yo montle

(Beautiful child)

Predicative: ngwana o montle

(The child is beautiful)

\*The adjective may appear in comparative clauses. With comparison Setswana has no equivalent form of inflexion but uses other expressions. Phrases based on infinitives; prepositional phrases and copulatives have been used to indicate comparison in Setswana:

(a) PP with jaaka:

Ngwana o ja [jaaka motho yo mogolo]

(The child eats like big person)

(b) Infinitive clause:

Monna [o moleele [go feta rre]

(The man is taller than my father)

Mosadi [o montsho [go gaisa monna]

(The woman is more black than man)

(c) Copulative na in go na le:

This has been used in phrases to show the comparison between the subject and the complement:

Monna [o moleele [go na le mosadi]

(The man is taller than woman)

\*The adjective may appear in any syntactic position within a clause as subject or object, and also as complement of various prepositions such as le, ka, ke.

Mosadi o ja [le [ngwana yo monnye]

(The woman eats with the little child)

Mosadi o ja [le [yo monnye ngwana]  
 (The woman eats with little child)

Mosadi o ja [le [yo monnye]  
 (The woman eats with little one:

Preposition ka:

Ka [monna yo mosweu]  
 (With white man)

Preposition ke:

Batho ba beditswe [ke [monna yo mogolo]  
 (People were beaten by the big man)

Batho ba beditswe [ke [yo mogolo monna]  
 (People were beaten by the big man)

Batho ba beditswe [ke [yo mogolo]  
 (People were beaten by big one)

- The relative clause may indicate the semantic features of an adjective as indicated above, and the following findings have been established with regard to this semantic function:

\*The relative clause appears with a determiner in the position of the complementizer and such a DET is then followed by an IP as complement. The IP may have a non-copulative or copulative verb. The relative clause with a non-copulative verb may express various semantic categories such as qualification, value, human characteristics and physical properties of the body, hue and food.

\*Attention has also been focused on the various copulative verbs which may appear in relative clauses. Such relatives are also known as nominal relatives in the literature. The main focus of chapter 3 is on the nominal relative stems which may appear as

complements of a copulative verb. These nominal relative stems have been divided into two sections, i.e. a section in which the nominal-relative stem may not appear in a descriptive possessive construction and a second section where this stem may also appear as complement of the possessive [a]. Specific attention has also been given to the selection restrictions on the antecedents of these relatives.

\*In the first section the nominal relative stem does not appear with a possessive [a]. These stems have been divided into various subsections such as:

(a) Nominal-relative stems which do not have any nominal functions:

There are nominal-relative stems which only appear as complements of copulative verbs with a descriptive function and which have no nominal function such as subjects or objects of clauses:

Ke [motho [yo [o polokwe]

(It is a muscular person)

(b) Nominal-relative stems which also have nominal functions:

The greatest number of nominal-relative stems regularly appear with nominal functions such as subject or object of a clause, but such nominals are frequently coerced into a descriptive function if the meaning of the specific noun is such that it may be possible to be coerced into another function i.e. a meaning which refers to a state may frequently be coerced into a descriptive function e.g. bonyemeku {suppleness):

As a nominal:

Re lebeletse [bonyemeku ba letlalo]

(We looked at the suppleness of the skin)

As a nominal-relative:

Ke [letlalo [le [le bonyemeku]

(It is a supple skin)

Such nominal-relative stems as above may have the following features:

- (i) The nominal is also a nominal-relative stem:

This subcategory may be coerced into a relative stem without the nominal undergoing any change at all in its form:

As nominal: [monate wa dijo] o batlilwe

(Deliciousness of food is wanted)

As nominal-relative stem: Ke [dijo [tse [di monate]

(It is delicious food)

(ii) Singular and plural:

The noun which appears as complement of a copulative clause has to appear in the singular if its antecedent is in the singular:

Sekgakga (dirty person : Class 7 singular) as antecedent:

Motho (person : Class 1 singular) as antecedent:

Ke [motho [yo [o sekgakga]

(It is a dirty person)

In plural (Class 8):

Ke [batho [ba [ba dikgakga]

(They are dirty people)

(iii) The noun may also appear in Class 14:

In class 14 nouns have an additional sense of state and this meaning makes it easy for such derived nouns in class 14 to be coerced with a descriptive function. Class 14 nouns may appear as complements of the possessive [a] with a descriptive meaning:

Ke [diaparo [tse di phepa]

(They are clean clothes)

In class 14 : Ke [diaparo [tse di [bophepa]

(They are clean clothes)

Possessive: Ke [diaparo [tsa bophepa]

(They are clean clothes)

(iv) Singular and plurals as well as derived class 14 nouns:

Singular/Plural:

Singular : Ke [mosadi [yo o senganga  
It is a conservative woman)  
Plural : Ke [basadi [ba ba dinganga  
(They are conservative women)

Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke mosadi [yo o bonganga]  
(It is a conservative woman)  
Possessive: Ke mosadi [wa bonganga]  
(It is a conservative woman)

\*In the second section the nominal-relative stem may appear as complement of a copulative verb or as complement of the possessive [a]. The subsections within this larger category comprise the following:

(a) Nominal relative and Descriptive Possessive:

The nominal relative stems have a descriptive function as a complement of a copulative verb as well as complement of a possessive [a]: There is no difference in the meaning of these two constructions e.g. dikgoka (muscular):

Nominal relative : Ke [monna [yo o dikgoka]  
(It is a muscular man)  
Possessive: Ke [monna [wa dikgoka]  
(It is a muscular man)

(b) Singular and Plural:

The noun may appear in the singular or plural:

Singular:

Nominal relative: Ke [ngwana] yo o boroko  
(It is a sleepy, drowsy child)  
Possessive: Ke [ngwana] wa boroko  
(It is a sleepy, drowsy child)

Plural:

Nominal relative: Ke [bana] ba ba maroko



(They are sleepy, drowsy children)

Possessive: Ke [bana] ba maroko

(They are sleepy, drowsy children)

(c) Ambiguity in possessive:

The noun which appears as a complement of the possessive [a] may have an ambiguous reference between a reading of possessive and descriptive possessive:

Singular:

Nominal relative: Ke [mosetsana] yo o senene

(It is a foolish girl)

Possessive: Ke mosetsana [wa senene]

(It is a girl of a foolish person)

Descriptive: Ke mosetsana [wa senene]

(It is a foolish girl)

Plural:

Nominal relative: Ke basadi [ba ba dinene]

(They are foolish women)

Possessive: Ke basadi [ba dinene]

(They are women of foolish people)

Descriptive possessive:

Ke basadi [ba dinene]

(They are foolish women)

(d) Derived Class 14 nouns:

The noun may appear as derived noun in class 14:

Nominal-relative:

Not class 14: Ke mosimane [yo o mareperepe]

(It is a big with flabby flesh boy)

Class 14: Ke mosimane [yo o boreperepe]

(It is a big with flabby flesh boy)

Descriptive possessive:

Not class 14: Ke mosimane [wa mareperepe]

(It is a big with flabby flesh boy)

Class 14: Ke mosimane [wa boreperepe]  
(It is a big with flabby flesh boy)

- (e) Singular and plural nouns as well as derived nouns: The noun may appear in singular or plural as well as in class 14:

Singular:

Nominal relative: Ke ngwana [yo o sekoa]  
(It is a weak and sickly child)

Possessive: Ke ngwana [wa sekoa]  
(It is a weak and sickly child)

Plural:

Nominal relative: Ke bana ba [ba dikoa]  
(They are weak and sickly children)

Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke ngwana yo o [boko]a  
(It is a weak and sickly child)

Possessive: Ke ngwana [wa boko]a  
(It is a weak and sickly child)

- (f) Ambiguity:

The noun may appear as above but when it occurs as a complement of the possessive [a], it has an ambiguous reading between possessive and descriptive possessive when it appears in the singular or plural. In Class 14 it has no ambiguous reading:

Singular:

Nominal relative: Ke mosadi [yo o modidi]  
(It is a poor woman)

Possessive: Ke mosadi [wa modidi]  
(It is a woman of poor man)

Descriptive possessive: Ke mosadi [wa modidi]  
(It is a poor woman)

Plural:

Nominal relative: Ke basadi [ba ba badidi]  
(They are poor woman)

Possessive: Ke basadi [ba badidi]  
(They are women of poor men)

Descriptive possessive: Ke basadi [ba badidi]  
(They are poor women)

Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke mosadi [yo o bodidi]  
(It is a poor woman)

Descriptive possessive: Ke mosadi [wa bodidi]  
(It is a poor woman)

(g) Descriptive possessive only:

The noun may only appear as a complement of a possessive [a] where it is ambiguous between a possessive and descriptive possessive. These nouns have to occur in the singular or plural as indicated above and also occur in class 14 where they are nominal relative stems or complements in a descriptive possessive only:

Singular:

Possessive: Ke mosadi [wa mokopi]  
(It is a woman of a poor man)

Descriptive possessive: Ke mosadi [wa mokopi]  
(It is a poor woman)

Plural:

Possessive: Ke basadi [ba bakopi]  
(They are women of poor men)

Descriptive possessive: Ke basadi [ba bakopi]  
(They are poor women)

Class 14:

Nominal relative: Ke mosadi [yo o bokopi]  
(It is a poor woman)

Descriptive possessive: Ke mosadi [wa bokopi]

(It is a poor woman)

\*The semantic features of these nominal-relative stems have been investigated with the aim of finding specific semantic categories. In this way various semantic features have been isolated:

Qualification:

This semantic feature refers to something that limits the force of a statement by agreeing or disagreeing with it, i.e. as either right or wrong and inaccurate:

- Wrong [phoso]:
- (a) Ke mola [o o phoso]  
(It is a wrong line)
  - (b) Ke mola [wa phoso]  
(It is a wrong line)

Speed:

The term refers to the quickness of movement or action and it may include the antonyms quick vs. slow.

bonako, bofefe (quick)

- (a) Ke sejanaga [se se bonako]  
(It is a quick car)
- (b) Ke sejanaga [sa bonako]  
(It is a quick car)

Distance:

This term refers to the amount of separation in a space or time i.e. amount of space between two points.

[kgakala] (remote)

- (a) Ke motse [o o kgakala]  
(It is a remote and distant village)
- (b) Ke motse [wa kgakala]  
(It is a remote and distant village)

Difficulty:

This type of stem denotes the fact or quality of being difficult i.e. needing a lot of effort, skill, hard to do or deal with, giving trouble.

[boima, bokete] (difficult)

- (a) Ke dithuto [tse di boima]

(They are difficult studies)

(b) Ke dithuto tsa boima

(They are difficult studies)

#### Value:

The term refers to the usefulness, helpfulness or importance of something especially when comparing with others or things:

Ke ngwana [yo o botoka]

(It is a better child)

#### Dimension:

The term dimension indicates a measurement in any direction for establishing the position of something in space:

Ke mosima [o o boteng]

(It is a deep hole)

#### Physical property:

This term refers to a certain quality of material things or the body of a person as opposed to things. Such qualities may be divided into various subcategories. A summarised list of such categories has been given in Chapter 3.

#### Qualities of the body:

Polokwe (muscular)

Setsompa (well-built and short)

Popego (shapely)

Senatla (strong)

Mokaloba (tall and strong)

Bokolwane (sturdy)

Bonyemeku (supple)

Bofefo (light-footed)

Pholo (healthy)

Boitekanelo (strong and healthy)

Phetakapejane (energetic)

Human characteristics:

The stems below refer to features of people which are special and easily recognised as a quality of a person. Such features have been grouped into various sub-categories in Chapter 3.

Good characteristic:	Molemo (good)
Bad characteristic:	bosula (evil)
Bad habit:	botswa (lazy)
Timid characteristic:	boi (timid)
Intelligence:	botlhale (intelligent)
Retarded:	setlatla (foolish)
Skills:	maitemogolo (experienced)
Wealth:	mohumi (rich)

Skills:

This term refers to features of people which are able to do something and easily recognised through their job or experience.

Ke morutabana [yo o sethakga]  
(It is a skilful teacher)

Wealth:

This term refers to features of people in their way of living.

Ke monna [yo o botlhoki]  
(It is a poor man)

Relative clauses with non-copulative verbs may be classified with certain semantic categories which are also applicable to nominal relatives. These verbal relatives serve only as an example of how extensive verbs may be utilized within a relative clause with a certain descriptive function:

1. Qualification:

Nepa (correct)  
Ke monna yo [o nepang]  
(It is a correct man)

2. Value:

Kgaba (well-dressed)

Ke motho yo [o kgabang]

(It is a well-dressed person)

3. Human characteristics:

## (a) Good characteristics:

Itumela (happy)

Ke motho yo [o itumelang]

(It is a happy person)

## (b) Bad characteristic

Gakala (furious, excited)

Mosadi yo [o gaketseng]

(It is a furious woman)

## (c) Timid characteristic:

dimokana (dizzy)

Ke ngwana yo [o [dimokanang]

(It is a dizzy child)

## (d) Retarded:

tsewa (mad)

Ke mosadi yo [o tsewang]

(It is a mad woman)

4. Physical Property:(i) Quality of the body:

## (a) Good quality:

nonofa (fit)

Ke ngwana yo [o nonofang]

(It is a fit child)

## (b) Bad quality: lapa (tired)

Ke monna yo [o lapang]

(It is a tired man)

- (ii) Hue:  
galalela (bright)  
Ke mmala o [o galalelang]  
(It is a bright colour)
- (iii) Food:  
baba (bitter)  
Ke dijo tse [di babang]  
(They are bitter food)

The third category which displays this semantic features is known as the descriptive possessive in the literature. With regard to the descriptive possessive in Chapter 4 the following issues have received attention:

A. The Syntactic structure:

In the syntactic structure of the possessive, the possessive phrase in Setswana uses a possessive [a] to indicate the possessor:

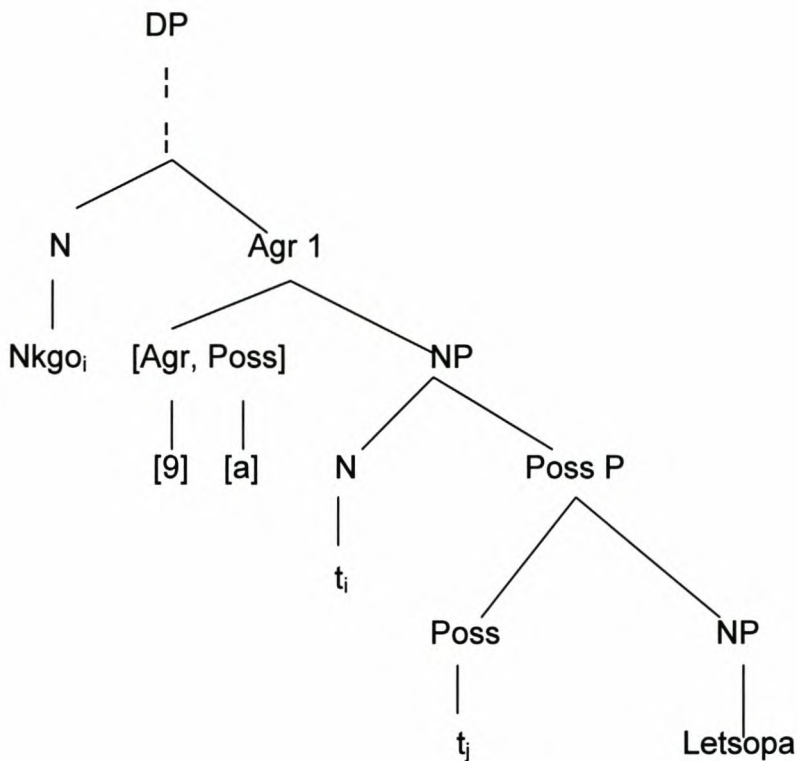
Ntlo [ya [monna]  
(The house of a man)

The NP with Ntlo as head is the possession while the NP with monna as head is the possessor. The NP with monna as head is also the complement of the possessive phrase with the possessive [a] as head. This possessive [a] shows an agreement morpheme of the possession as an essential requirement.

The structure of a descriptive possessive phrase has been represented as follows:

[Nkgo [ya [letsopa]  
(Pot of clay i.e. clay pot)





In this structure the possessive [a] still appears but it does not have any reference to possession. Instead it has the function of description, i.e. it has introduced the substance that the pot is made of which is clay.

#### B. The Semantics of the descriptive possessive

In Chapter 3 the descriptive possessive construction has been established and it indicates that the construction of this possessive may appear with various interpretations, i.e. the descriptive noun may appear as a nominal relative stem or as a complement of the possessive [a] and there are some of these nouns which may not appear as a complement of the descriptive possessive [a]. Then 8 major semantic categories have already been established: qualification, speed, value, distance, difficulty, dimension, physical property and human characteristics.

In Chapter 4 other descriptive possessives have been established which do not occur also as nominal-relative stems such as:

- The complement of the possessive [a] is a noun phrase, e.g.
  - Ntlo [ya [mmu]
  - (The house of soil)
  
  - Tsela [ya [lerole]
  - (Dusty road)
  
- The complement of the possessive [a] is a locative phrase, e.g.
  - Diphologolo [tsa [mo metsing]
  - (Water animals)
  - Bana [ba [mo motseng]
  - (Village children)
  
- The complement of the possessive [a] is a temporal noun phrase, e.g.
  - Maduo [a [ngwaga]
  - (Year marks)
  - Ditlhatlhobo [tsa [Ngwanatsele]
  - (November examinations)
  
- The complement of the possessive [a] is an infinitive clause, e.g.
  - Lefelo [la [go nna]
  - (place to sit)
  - Dilo [tsa [go apara]
  - (Things to wear)
  
- The complement of the possessive [a] is a gore-clause, e.g.
  - Ke utlwile [dikgang [tsa [gore ba tlile]
  - (I heard [the news that they have arrived])
  - Ke itse [nako [ya [gore re kopane]
  - (I know [the time that we should meet])
  
- A clear distinction has been made between nouns denoting individuals such as mosimane (boy) and nouns denoting groups such as

setlhopha (groups). Group nouns have been included in the set of collective nouns such as:

Setlhopha sa banna

(group of men)

Kokoano ya basadi

(crowd of women)

- The partitives indicate that a part of a collective whole is meant, i.e. the part in partitive possessive construction is the head of the noun phrase. The noun phrase which is the complement of the possessive [a] gives the whole of which a part is expressed, e.g.

Bogale ba thipa

(blade of knife)

Sethibo sa botlolo

(Stopper of a bottle)

**BIBLIOGRAPHY**

- Backhouse, A.E. 1984. Have all the adjectives gone? **Lingua** vol. 62.
- Bhat, D.N.S. 1994. **The adjectival category**. John Benjamins.
- Bolinger, D. 1967. Adjectives in English: Attribution and predication. **Lingua** vol. 18.
- Bowers, J.S. 1975. "Adjectives and adverbs in English". **Foundations for language** 13: 529-542.
- Charles, W.G., Miller, G.A. 1989. Contexts of antonymous adjectives. **Applied Psycholinguistics** vol. 10.
- Clements, J.C. 1988. The semantics and pragmatics of the Spanish copula + adjective construction. **Linguistics** vol. 26.
- Coates, J. 1971. Denominal adjectives. A study in syntactic relationship between modifier and head. **Lingua** 27: 160-169.
- Cole, D.T. 1995. An introduction to Tswana grammar. Longman.
- Dixon, R.M.W. 1977. Where have all the adjectives gone? **Studies in language**, vol. 11.
- Dixon, R.M.W. 1991. **A new approach to English grammar on semantic principles**. Clarendon Press.
- Doke, C.M. and S.M. Mofokeng. 1957. Textbook of Southern Sotho grammar: Longman.
- Dryer, M.S. 1988. Object-verb order and adjective-noun order: dispelling a myth. **Lingua** 74: 185-217.
- Fellbaum, C. 1995. Co-occurrence and antonymy. **International Journal of Lexicography** vol. 8.
- Fellbaum, C. 1998. **WordNet**. The MIT Press.
- Ferris, C. 1993. **The meaning of syntax: a study in the adjectives of English**. Longman./
- Givon, I 1970. Notes on the semantic structure of English adjectives. **Language** vol. 46.

- Gross, D., Fisher, U., Miller, G.A. 1989. The organization of adjectival meanings. **Journal of memory and language**, vol. 28.
- Haag, M. 1997. Continuous and discrete adjectival scales. **Lingua** vol. 103.
- Hendrick, R. 1978. The phrase structure of adjectives and comparatives. **Linguistic Analysis** 4: 255-299.
- Hoepelman, J. 1983. Adjectives and nouns: a new calculus. In Bauerle, R. et al (eds.). **Meaning, use and interpretation of language**. Berlin: Walter de Gruyter: 190-220.
- Justeson, J.S., Katz, S.M. 1991. Co-occurrences of antonymns adjectives and their contexts. **Computational Linguistics** vol. 14.
- Kamp, J.A.W. 1975. Two theories about adjectives. In Keenan, E.L. (ed.). **Formal semantics of natural language**. London: Cambridge University Press: 123-155.
- Kefer, M., Van der Anwera, J. (eds.). 1992. **Meaning and grammar: Cross-linguistic perspectives**. Mouton de Gruyter.
- Klein, E. 1982. The interpretation of adjectival comparatives. **Journal of Linguistics**, vol. 18.
- Louwrens, L.J. 1994. A Linguistic Analysis of Northern Sotho. Via Afrika.
- Murphy, G.L., Andrew, J.M. 1993. The conceptual basis of antonymy and synonymy in adjectives. **Journal of memory and language** vol. 32.
- Siegel, M.E.A. 1979. Measure adjectives in Montague grammar. In: S. Davis, M. Mithun: **Linguistics, philosophy and Montague grammar**. University of Texas Press.
- Wierzbicka, A. 1986. What is a noun? (or: How do nouns differ in meaning from adjectives?) **Studies in Language** 10:353-389.
- Zimmermann, I. 1989. The syntax of comparative constructions. In Bierwisch, M. and Lang, E. (eds.). **Dimensional adjectives**. Heidelberg: Springer-Verlag: 13-70.